ISSN 1007-9327 (print)
ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

World Journal of *Gastroenterology*

World J Gastroenterol 2021 April 7; 27(13): 1255-1361

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Contents

Weekly Volume 27 Number 13 April 7, 2021

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Gastroenterology*, Giovanna Ferraioli, MD, FAIUM, Associate Professor, Researcher, Department of Clinical Surgical, Diagnostic and Pediatric Sciences, Medical School University of Pavia, Viale Brambilla 74, Pavia 27100, Italy. giovanna.ferraioli@unipv.it

AIMS AND SCOPE

The primary aim of *World Journal of Gastroenterology* (*WJG*, *World J Gastroenterol*) is to provide scholars and readers from various fields of gastroenterology and hepatology with a platform to publish high-quality basic and clinical research articles and communicate their research findings online. *WJG* mainly publishes articles reporting research results and findings obtained in the field of gastroenterology and hepatology and covering a wide range of topics including gastroenterology, hepatology, gastrointestinal endoscopy, gastrointestinal surgery, gastrointestinal oncology, and pediatric gastroenterology.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

The *WJG* is now indexed in Current Contents®/Clinical Medicine, Science Citation Index Expanded (also known as SciSearch®), Journal Citation Reports®, Index Medicus, MEDLINE, PubMed, PubMed Central, and Scopus. The 2020 edition of Journal Citation Report® cites the 2019 impact factor (IF) for *WJG* as 3.665; IF without journal self cites: 3.534; 5-year IF: 4.048; Ranking: 35 among 88 journals in gastroenterology and hepatology; and Quartile category: Q2. The *WJG*'s CiteScore for 2019 is 7.1 and Scopus CiteScore rank 2019: Gastroenterology is 17/137.

RESPONSIBLE EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Production Editor: *Yu-Jie Ma*; **Production Department Director:** *Xiang Li*; **Editorial Office Director:** *Ze-Mao Gong*.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Gastroenterology

ISSN
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
October 1, 1995

FREQUENCY
Weekly

EDITORS-IN-CHIEF
Andrzej S Tarnawski, Subrata Ghosh

EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS
http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/editorialboard.htm

PUBLICATION DATE
April 7, 2021

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/204

GUIDELINES FOR ETHICS DOCUMENTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/287

GUIDELINES FOR NON-NATIVE SPEAKERS OF ENGLISH
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/240

PUBLICATION ETHICS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/288

PUBLICATION MISCONDUCT
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/208

ARTICLE PROCESSING CHARGE
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/242

STEPS FOR SUBMITTING MANUSCRIPTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/239

ONLINE SUBMISSION
https://www.f6publishing.com

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2021 April 7; 27(13): 1255-1266

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1255

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Coronavirus disease–2019 and the intestinal tract: An overview

Gabriela Gama Freire Alberca, Rosa Liliana Solis-Castro, Maria Edith Solis-Castro, Ricardo Wesley Alberca

ORCID number: Gabriela Gama Freire Alberca 0000-0002-3467-5562; Rosa Liliana Solis-Castro 0000-0002-1813-8644; Maria Edith Solis-Castro 0000-0001-5514-849X; Ricardo Wesley Alberca 0000-0002-3602-3306.

Author contributions: All authors contributed to the conception, writing, and review of the article and approved the submitted version.

Supported by RWA holds a fellowship from Fundação de Amparo à Pesquisa do Estado de São Paulo (FAPESP), No. 19/02679-7.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare having no conflicts of interest.

Gabriela Gama Freire Alberca, Department of Microbiology, Institute of Biomedical Sciences-University of São Paulo, São Paulo 05508-000, Brazil

Rosa Liliana Solis-Castro, Departamento Académico de Biología Bioquímica, Facultad de Ciencias de la Salud, Universidad Nacional de Tumbes, Pampa Grande 24000, Tumbes, Peru

Maria Edith Solis-Castro, Departamento Académico de Medicina Humana, Facultad de Ciencias de la Salud, Universidad Nacional de Tumbes, Pampa Grande 24000, Tumbes, Peru

Ricardo Wesley Alberca, Laboratorio de Dermatologia e Imunodeficiencias (LIM-56), Departamento de Dermatologia, Faculdade de Medicina FMUSP, Universidade de São Paulo, São Paulo 01246-903, Brazil

Corresponding author: Ricardo Wesley Alberca, PhD, Academic Research, Research Fellow, Laboratorio de Dermatologia e Imunodeficiencias (LIM-56), Departamento de Dermatologia, Faculdade de Medicina FMUSP, Universidade de São Paulo, 455-Cerqueira César, São Paulo 01246-903, Brazil. ricardowesley@gmail.com

Abstract

Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-2 (SARS-CoV-2) infection can progress to a severe respiratory and systemic disease named coronavirus disease–2019 (COVID-19). The most common symptoms are fever and respiratory discomfort. Nevertheless, gastrointestinal infections have been reported, with symptoms such as diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, and lack of appetite. Importantly, SARS-CoV-2 can remain positive in fecal samples after nasopharyngeal clearance. After gastrointestinal SARS-CoV-2 infection and other viral gastrointestinal infections, some patients may develop alterations in the gastrointestinal microbiota. In addition, some COVID-19 patients may receive antibiotics, which may also disturb gastrointestinal homeostasis. In summary, the gastrointestinal system, gut microbiome, and gut-lung axis may represent an important role in the development, severity, and treatment of COVID-19. Therefore, in this review, we explore the current pieces of evidence of COVID-19 gastrointestinal manifestations, possible implications, and interventions.

Key Words: COVID-19; SARS-CoV-2; Gastrointestinal; Microbiota; Antibiotics

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Brazil

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: January 20, 2021
Peer-review started: January 20, 2021
First decision: February 9, 2021
Revised: February 10, 2021
Accepted: March 8, 2021
Article in press: March 8, 2021
Published online: April 7, 2021

P-Reviewer: Khan MKA
S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Ma YJ

Core Tip: Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-2 (SARS-CoV-2) infection can progress to a severe respiratory and systemic disease named coronavirus disease–2019 (COVID-19). Nevertheless, SARS-CoV-2 can also generate a gastrointestinal infection. In this review, we explore the impact of COVID-19 on the gastrointestinal system, gut microbiome, and the gut-lung axis and the severity and possible implications and interventions in COVID-19 patients.

Citation: Alberca GGF, Solis-Castro RL, Solis-Castro ME, Alberca RW. Coronavirus disease–2019 and the intestinal tract: An overview. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(13): 1255-1266
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i13/1255.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1255

INTRODUCTION

The coronavirus disease–2019 (COVID-19) is caused by severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-2 (SARS-CoV-2). Coronaviruses (CoVs) are a family of single-stranded ribonucleic acid (RNA) viruses; currently six subtypes of CoVs can infect humans. Two CoVs, the Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus and severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-1 (SARS-CoV-1), are the etiologic agents of the previous epidemics and have caused over 2000 deaths worldwide[1,2].

COVID-19 can cause a systemic and respiratory infection that can lead to death[3]. Since November 2019, SARS-CoV-2 has infected over 80 million people and killed over 1.5 million people worldwide, being declared a pandemic by the World Health Organization[4]. Several comorbidities have been postulated as risk factors for severe COVID-19, such as high age[5], smoking, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease[6], obesity[7], pregnancy[8], and co-infections[9].

SARS-CoV-2 uses the angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 (ACE2) and transmembrane protease serine 2 (TMPRSS2) to invade the host's cells. ACE2 and TMPRSS2 are expressed in many different organs in the human body, such as the lungs, heart, liver, kidney, and brain, intestine luminal cells, colonic epithelial cells, and small intestinal enterocytes[10-13]. In addition, SARS-CoV-2 infection has been described in multiple organs, including the lungs, pharynx, heart, liver, brain, kidneys, and gastrointestinal tract[14,15].

COVID-19 AND THE GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT

Gastrointestinal infections have been reported[16] (Table 1), with a lower frequency in comparison with the previous SARS-CoV-1 infection[17]. Nevertheless, SARS-CoV-2 can remain positive in fecal samples after nasopharyngeal clearance and may remain infective[18].

The most frequent gastrointestinal symptoms in COVID-19 are diarrhea, nausea, abdominal pain, and lack of appetite[19]. After a viral gastrointestinal infection, some patients may develop alterations on the gastrointestinal microbiota such as an increase of Proteobacteria and a simultaneous reduction of Bacteriodetes[20]. A recent report by Zuo *et al*[21] identified alterations in the intestinal microbiota of hospitalized patients with COVID-19, with a reduction in beneficial commensals bacteria and an increase in opportunistic pathogens[21]. In addition, Gupta *et al*[18] verified a reduction in the community richness and microbial diversity in COVID-19 patients with and without diarrhea. The intestinal tissue and feces may also be acting as a reservoir; recent reports have identified that even after negative nasopharyngeal and oropharyngeal swabs test for SARS-CoV-2 RNA, patients could still possess SARS-CoV-2 RNA in the stool samples[16,22]. Another report identified that the duration of COVID-19 symptoms was prolonged in patients with diarrhea and that the stool samples from patients with diarrhea were more frequently positive for virus RNA[23].

Although is not clear the mechanisms responsible for the development of diarrhea in COVID-19, the current hypothesis is that the direct viral infection on the intestinal tissue and local immune response to the virus may be involved. In fact, the detection

Table 1 Manuscripts describing patients with severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-2 ribonucleic acid detection in rectal swabs or fecal samples

COVID-19 respiratory manifestations	COVID-19 gastrointestinal clinical manifestations	Percentage of patients with gastrointestinal clinical manifestations	Rectal swabs or fecal samples positive for SARS-CoV-2	Ref.
Yes	Yes	65.38%	53.42%	[16]
Yes	Yes	60%	50%	[122]
Yes	Yes	80%	90%	[123]
Yes	Yes	11%	22%	[124]
Yes	Yes	33%	80%	[125]
Yes	Yes	No data	39%	[126]
Yes (89 only respiratory/69 respiratory and gastrointestinal)	Yes (48 only gastrointestinal/69 respiratory and gastrointestinal)	56%	54% of a cohort of 22 individuals	[127]
Yes	Yes	No data	29%	[128]
Yes	Yes	31%	55%	[24]
Yes	Yes	No data	83%	[129]
Yes	Yes	No data	25%	[130]

COVID-19: Coronavirus disease–2019; SARS-CoV-2: Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-2.

of SARS-CoV-2 RNA in stool COVID-19 patients may indicate the possibility of fecal-oral transmission[24].

In addition to the SARS-CoV-2 impact on the gut immune response, bacterial co-infections and secondary infection could also occur in COVID-19 patients, implicating the necessary usage of antibiotics[25]. Nevertheless, even in the absence of bacterial co-infections in COVID-19 patients some reports highlighted that the usage of antibiotics is a common clinical practice in COVID-19 patients[25,26], which could also disrupt the gastrointestinal microbiome. Bacterial communities are present in numerous body sites such as the gut, the respiratory system, and skin; therefore, the unnecessary usage of antibiotics may predispose COVID-19 patients to opportunistic infections inside and outside of the gastrointestinal environment.

GUT MICROBIOTA

The microbiota is influenced by environmental factors, food, drugs, and infections[27]. Each microbiota possesses unique characteristics[28,29], differing its composition according to the site in the human body. Many factors influence the microbiome composition such as local pH, temperature, and nutrients[30]. Microorganisms can be found in nearly every niche of the human body[31], but the gastrointestinal tract is the largest interface between the host and microorganisms in the human body. There are approximately 10^{13}-10^{14} microorganisms in the gastrointestinal tract, with greater genomic content than in the human genome[32].

Microbes and humans have a symbiotic relationship. Commensal microbes are crucial for human health, regulating many physiological functions, degradation of substances, production of metabolites, and immune response[33]. Microorganisms can activate and stimulate the differentiation of T helper cells (Th) 1, Th2, Th17, and T regulatory cells (Treg), which in consequence can regulate the immune response[34,35]. A low-diversity in the intestinal microbiota can increase the susceptibility to local[36] and pulmonary disorders[37].

The microbiome's environment is in constant regulation, modulated by external microorganisms and other non-bacterial compounds, for example, food in the intestinal microbiota and viruses. An abrupt change in the microbiota can generate an imbalance in the commensal bacteria and/or increase opportunistic microbes, increasing the susceptibility to diseases[38,39].

The microbiota is essential for the development of the human immune system and can influence both local and non-local immune responses, such as the gut-lung axis[40].

It is well established that alterations in the gut microbiota can modulate the development of respiratory disease[41].

In patients with gut dysbiosis such as patients with an established intestinal inflammatory disease or obese patients, the intestinal microbiota may be a secondary risk factor for the development of severe COVID-19[7]. Besides, patients with COVID-19 may develop a dysbiosis in the gastrointestinal microbiota[21] and a reduction in short-chain fatty acid-producing bacteria[42].

GUT MICROBIOTA DYSBIOSIS

Disruption of the gut microbiota can trigger inflammatory events that are associated with metabolic dysfunction, obesity, cancer, and neurological disorders[43,44]. The proliferation or reduction in certain microorganisms can increase the stimulation of innate immune receptors, like nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-like receptors and Toll-like receptors[45]. The stimulation of this receptor triggers several pro-inflammatory signals and the production of cytokine and chemokine, which modulate the adaptive immune system, influencing both local and systemic immune response[43,44].

The activation of Toll-like receptors on immune cells by the microbiota can generate a low-grade systemic inflammation in the host that is associated with a change in metabolic and immunological responses[46]. Alterations in the microbiome are related to the development of diseases such as obesity, inflammatory bowel disease, and cancer[47]. Therefore, SARS-CoV-2 gastrointestinal infections and alteration of gut homeostasis may be implicated in the development of disease and impact immune response to oral vaccines and medicines and the pathogen immune response[48,49].

NUTRITIONAL INTERVENTION

Several reports have highlighted the potential role of nutrients in the modulation of the immune response to SARS-CoV-2 or a direct anti-viral and/or anti-SARS-CoV-2 properties[50-53]. During this pandemic, nutritional aspects such as obesity[7,54], malnutrition[55], and micronutrient deficiency[56,57] have been postulated as risk factors for severe COVID-19. Nevertheless, the composition of the human microbiota is influenced by many factors, including dietary components[41]. Some bacteria can ferment nondigestible carbohydrates (prebiotics), like soluble fibers, to produce short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs). SCFAs can stimulate the growth and/or activity of commensal bacteria and are associated with health benefits. SCFAs can induce the regulation of the intestinal barrier, reduce oxidative stress, control diarrhea, and modulate intestinal motility and also induce a local and systemic anti-inflammatory effect[58,59].

High-fiber diets can induce the proliferation of beneficial commensal microbes, such as *Lactobacillus* spp. and *Bifidobacterium* spp. in the gastrointestinal tract[60]. In fact, high-fiber diets may increase immunoglobulin A production and modulate the secretion of interferon-gamma and interleukin (IL)-10[61-63], which could aid in the control of gastrointestinal infections.

Prebiotics may alter the microbiota composition by a mechanism called cross-feeding, when the product of a prebiotic's fermentation by a microorganism in the microbiota can be used as a substrate by another microorganism[64-66]. Another mechanism that prebiotics can alter the microbiota is through pH alterations. The fermentation products are predominantly acids, which may cause a decrease in the intestinal pH, restraining the growth of acid-sensitive bacteria, such as *Bacteroides* spp., and promoting butyrate-producing bacteria[67].

SCFAs are divided into acetate, propionate, and butyrate. All SCFAs have potential anti-inflammatory effects with the reduction of prostaglandin E2 and inflammatory cytokines[68]. Acetate can curb the activation of the NLR family pyrin domain containing 3 inflammasome[69]; propionate can inhibit histone deacetylase and reduce lipopolysaccharide-induced inflammation[70]. Butyrate has been associated with anti-cancer properties and reduces pulmonary inflammation[71,72].

Overall, research has demonstrated a potential anti-inflammatory role for SCFAs in both local (intestinal) and non-local inflammation *via* direct anti-inflammatory effects or modulation of the microbiota[71,73,74].

SCFAs can induce the release of anti-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-10[75,76], promoting the regulation of Th cells and inflammatory diseases[77], including

inflammatory bowel disease[78].

Another intervention for the modulation of the gastrointestinal microbiome is *via* the consumption of probiotics. Probiotics are bacteria that can be ingested and provide a beneficial interaction to the host[79]. Several studies have investigated the effects of probiotics on the gut microbiota[80], with conflicting results involving their ability to graft on the commensal microbiota[81-84]. However, probiotics can produce metabolites that can modify and influence the commensal microbiota, intestinal barrier, and immune system[85,86].

Probiotics can also aid in the prevention or treatment of bacterial[87] and viral infections[88]. The administration of probiotics increases the survival of mice infected with the influenza virus[87]. Besides the influenza virus, studies have demonstrated beneficial protection against respiratory syncytial virus infection[89].

The heath benefit of probiotics in respiratory viral infections is due to the modulation of cytokine production and oxidative stress[90]; therefore, they may possibly be an adjuvant treatment for the aberrant release of pro-inflammatory cytokines, chemokines, and oxidative stress during severe COVID-19[91].

The most used probiotics are *Lactobacillus*, *Bifidobacterium*, and *Enterococcus*[92]. Although there is extensive research demonstrating their health benefits, currently there is a gap in knowledge involving the ideal dosage and comparison among strains of probiotics[93].

DISCUSSION

COVID-19 is a potentially deadly disease, which can infect intestinal cells[13]. SARS-CoV-2 gastrointestinal infections[16] can generate diarrhea, pain, and vomiting[19]. To date, few reports have investigated the possible consequences of gastrointestinal infection by SARS-CoV-2; nevertheless, viral infections can alter the gastrointestinal microbiota[20]. A report by Xu *et al*[94] identified a reduction in *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* in fecal samples from COVID-19 patients[94]. Also, the microbiome of COVID-19 patients can be disturbed by the necessary or unnecessary use of antibiotics[34].

Yeoh *et al*[95] identified that the alteration on the gastrointestinal microbiome in COVID-19 patients was independent of medications. The alterations on the gut microbiome included a reduction in *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*, *Eubacterium rectale*, and *bifidobacteria* for up to 30 d after SARS-CoV-2 clearance[95].

The microbiota dysbiosis in COVID-19 may be involved in the inflammatory response and may be a persistent problem after COVID-19 resolution, indicating a possible role for nutritional interventions to curb the inflammatory response and reestablish the gastrointestinal homeostasis of COVID-19 patients.

Dietary and nutritional intervention can modulate the immune response, increasing or dampening the anti-viral response[59-62]. Western-style diets (low fiber content) can increase *Bacteroidetes* and reduce *Firmicutes*[96] and are linked to the development of obesity[97], a risk factor for severe COVID-19[7]. Although reports have identified an increase in SCFAs in fecal samples from obese individuals[96], SCFAs have been associated with control of appetite[98] and increase energy expenditure[99].

In addition, very low fiber-diets can lower mucus production on the intestine and increase the susceptibility to gastrointestinal infections[39]. Importantly, a change in diet can modify the microbiota composition[100]. The microbial communities are in constant change and are also affected seasonally by food consumption[101]. In fact, a reduction in the consumption of fiber can change the microbiota in as little as 1 d, reducing SCFAs production[102].

In opposition, high fiber-diets increase *Firmicutes* and *Actinobacteria* on the gut microbiota[103] and increase the production of SCFAs, which can aid in the reduction of pulmonary inflammation, *via* the gut-lung axis[41,104,105] and promote a local and systemic anti-inflammatory response *via* IL-10 production and Treg cells[75,76,106]. The ingestion of probiotics may stabilize or alter the gastrointestinal microbiome, especially after a perturbation of the microbiota such as post usage of antibiotics or gastrointestinal infections[107].

Probiotic treatments with *Bacillus subtilis* and *Enterococcus faecalis* have been demonstrated to reduce ventilator-associated pneumonia[108]. Treatment with *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* can reduce ventilator-associated pneumonia and *Clostridium difficile*-associated diarrhea in mechanically ventilated patients[109], making it a possible addition to the treatment of patients with severe COVID-19 in intensive care units with assisted mechanical ventilation. Treatment with *Lactobacillus* may be of particular

importance, because respiratory infections may cause a reduction in *Lactobacillus*, and an increase in *Enterobacteriaceae* and intestinal IL-17 inflammation[110].

Targeting IL-17 has been postulated as a treatment for COVID-19[111] because of the increase in IL-17 in severe COVID-19 patients compared to moderate COVID-19 patients[111]. IL-17 and IL-17-producing T helper cells (Th17), type three innate lymphoid cells, invariant natural killer cells, and γδ T cells are involved in the immune response of COVID-19[112]. IL-17 receptor is expressed on the surface of many different cells such as neutrophils, eosinophils, epithelial cells, keratinocytes, and fibroblasts[112]. In addition, IL-17 can directly influence the expression of ACE2, SARS-CoV-2 entry's receptor[113].

The usage of IL-17 blockade, such as monoclonal antibodies against IL-17A and/or IL-17 receptor A, may represent a possible therapeutic option for COVID-19[112]. Nevertheless, IL-17 is an important cytokine in the immune response against *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, common pathogens in respiratory and intestinal tract infections[112,114]. Secondary bacterial infections can occur in the respiratory system following SARS-CoV-2 infection, especially in patients with invasive mechanical ventilation[34]. IL-17 is especially important for intestinal homeostasis[115]. Therefore, treatment with anti-IL-17 should consider the possible risk for an increase in susceptibility for bacterial infections both respiratory and intestinal.

COVID-19 patients may also develop a cytokine storm syndrome, which may induce multi-organ failure and lead to death or long-term consequences[91]. In this context, probiotics or prebiotics treatment have been previously demonstrated anti-inflammatory effects in respiratory infections *via* the increase in SCFAs[71,73,74,88,116].

SCFAs production and health benefit can be increased by the ingestion of highly fermentable fiber diets[117], probiotics[73], oral administration of drugs like tributyrin (a prodrug of butyrate)[118], or SCFAs directly[119-121].

In this context, the intake of prebiotics and/or probiotics can represent a significant prophylactic intervention and/or recovery of COVID-19 patients.

CONCLUSION

The SARS-CoV-2 infection on the gastrointestinal tract and the long-term consequences of COVID-19 in gastrointestinal homeostasis still needs further investigations. It is clear that SARS-CoV-2 can infect the gastrointestinal tract and impact the intestinal immune response and the gut microbiome. Currently, there is no specific treatment for COVID-19, but investigations on the impact of nutritional intervention *via* modulation of the immune response or *via* microbiota are been investigated and may represent a significant prophylactic intervention and/or recovery of COVID.

REFERENCES

1 **V'kovski P**, Kratzel A, Steiner S, Stalder H, Thiel V. Coronavirus biology and replication: implications for SARS-CoV-2. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2021; 19: 155-170 [PMID: 33116300 DOI: 10.1038/s41579-020-00468-6]

2 **Su S**, Wong G, Shi W, Liu J, Lai ACK, Zhou J, Liu W, Bi Y, Gao GF. Epidemiology, Genetic Recombination, and Pathogenesis of Coronaviruses. *Trends Microbiol* 2016; **24**: 490-502 [PMID: 27012512 DOI: 10.1016/j.tim.2016.03.003]

3 **Alberca GGF**, Fernandes IG, Sato MN, Alberca RW. What Is COVID-19? *Front Young Minds* 2020; **8**: 74 [DOI: 10.3389/frym.2020.00074]

4 **WHO**. WHO Coronavirus Disease (COVID-19) Dashboard. [cited July 30, 2020]. Available from: https://covid19.who.int/

5 **Alberca RW**, Andrade MM de S, Castelo Branco ACC, Pietrobon AJ, Pereira NZ, Fernandes IG, Oliveira LDM, Teixeira FME, Beserra DR, Araujo E, Gozzi-Silva SC, Ramos YÁL, De Brito CA, Arnone M, Orfali RL, Aoki V, Duarte AJDS, Sato MN. Frequencies of CD33+ CD11b+ HLA-DR- CD14- CD66b+ and CD33+ CD11b+ HLA-DR- CD14+ CD66b- cells in peripheral blood as severity immune biomarkers in COVID-19. *Front Med (Lausanne)* 2020; **7**: 654 [PMID: 33178720 DOI: 10.3389/FMED.2020.580677]

6 **Alberca RW**, Lima JC, de Oliveira EA, Gozzi-Silva SC, Leuzzi YÁ, Mary De Souza Andrade M, Beserra DR, Oliveira LDM, Castelo Branco ACC, Pietrobon AJ, Pereira NZ, Teixeira FME, Fernandes IG, Benard G, Sato MN. COVID-19 disease course in formers smokers, smokers and COPD patients. *Front Physiol* 2020; **11**: 1860 [DOI: 10.3389/FPHYS.2020.637627]

7 **Alberca RW**, Oliveira LM, Branco ACCC, Pereira NZ, Sato MN. Obesity as a risk factor for COVID-19: an overview. *Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr* 2020; 1-15 [PMID: 32539446 DOI:

10.1080/10408398.2020.1775546]
8 **Alberca RW**, Pereira NZ, Oliveira LMDS, Gozzi-Silva SC, Sato MN. Pregnancy, Viral Infection, and COVID-19. *Front Immunol* 2020; **11**: 1672 [PMID: 32733490 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2020.01672]
9 **Alberca RW**, Yendo TM, Leuzzi Ramos YÁ, Fernandes IG, Oliveira LM, Teixeira FME, Beserra DR, de Oliveira EA, Gozzi-Silva SC, Andrade MMS, Branco ACCC, Pietrobon AJ, Pereira NZ, de Brito CA, Orfali RL, Aoki V, Duarte AJDS, Benard G, Sato MN. Case Report: COVID-19 and Chagas Disease in Two Coinfected Patients. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2020; **103**: 2353-2356 [PMID: 33025877 DOI: 10.4269/ajtmh.20-1185]
10 **Vuille-dit-Bille RN**, Camargo SM, Emmenegger L, Sasse T, Kummer E, Jando J, Hamie QM, Meier CF, Hunziker S, Forras-Kaufmann Z, Kuyumcu S, Fox M, Schwizer W, Fried M, Lindenmeyer M, Götze O, Verrey F. Human intestine luminal ACE2 and amino acid transporter expression increased by ACE-inhibitors. *Amino Acids* 2015; **47**: 693-705 [PMID: 25534429 DOI: 10.1007/s00726-014-1889-6]
11 **Zhang H**, Li HB, Lyu JR, Lei XM, Li W, Wu G, Lyu J, Dai ZM. Specific ACE2 expression in small intestinal enterocytes may cause gastrointestinal symptoms and injury after 2019-nCoV infection. *Int J Infect Dis* 2020; **96**: 19-24 [PMID: 32311451 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijid.2020.04.027]
12 **Wang J**, Zhao S, Liu M, Zhao Z, Xu Y, Wang P, Lin M, Huang B, Zuo X, Chen Z, Bai F, Cui J, Lew A, Zhao J, Zhang Y, Luo H. ACE2 expression by colonic epithelial cells is associated with viral infection, immunity and energy metabolism. *medRxiv* 2020; 2020.02.05.20020545 [DOI: 10.1101/2020.02.05.20020545]
13 **Dong M**, Zhang J, Ma X, Tan J, Chen L, Liu S, Xin Y, Zhuang L. ACE2, TMPRSS2 distribution and extrapulmonary organ injury in patients with COVID-19. *Biomed Pharmacother* 2020; **131**: 110678 [PMID: 32861070 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopha.2020.110678]
14 **Puelles VG**, Lütgehetmann M, Lindenmeyer MT, Sperhake JP, Wong MN, Allweiss L, Chilla S, Heinemann A, Wanner N, Liu S, Braun F, Lu S, Pfefferle S, Schröder AS, Edler C, Gross O, Glatzel M, Wichmann D, Wiech T, Kluge S, Pueschel K, Aepfelbacher M, Huber TB. Multiorgan and Renal Tropism of SARS-CoV-2. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **383**: 590-592 [PMID: 32402155 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc2011400]
15 **Lamers MM**, Beumer J, van der Vaart J, Knoops K, Puschhof J, Breugem TI, Ravelli RBG, Paul van Schayck J, Mykytyn AZ, Duimel HQ, van Donselaar E, Riesebosch S, Kuijpers HJH, Schipper D, van de Wetering WJ, de Graaf M, Koopmans M, Cuppen E, Peters PJ, Haagmans BL, Clevers H. SARS-CoV-2 productively infects human gut enterocytes. *Science* 2020; **369**: 50-54 [PMID: 32358202 DOI: 10.1126/science.abc1669]
16 **Xiao F**, Tang M, Zheng X, Liu Y, Li X, Shan H. Evidence for Gastrointestinal Infection of SARS-CoV-2. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 1831-1833. e3 [PMID: 32142773 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.02.055]
17 **Cheng VC**, Hung IF, Tang BS, Chu CM, Wong MM, Chan KH, Wu AK, Tse DM, Chan KS, Zheng BJ, Peiris JS, Sung JJ, Yuen KY. Viral replication in the nasopharynx is associated with diarrhea in patients with severe acute respiratory syndrome. *Clin Infect Dis* 2004; **38**: 467-475 [PMID: 14765337 DOI: 10.1086/382681]
18 **Gupta S**, Parker J, Smits S, Underwood J, Dolwani S. Persistent viral shedding of SARS-CoV-2 in faeces - a rapid review. *Colorectal Dis* 2020; **22**: 611-620 [PMID: 32418307 DOI: 10.1111/codi.15138]
19 **Amaral LTW**, Brito VM, Beraldo GL, Fonseca EKUN, Yokoo P, Talans A, Oranges Filho M, Chate RC, Baroni RH, Szarf G. Abdominal symptoms as initial manifestation of COVID-19: a case series. *Einstein (Sao Paulo)* 2020; **18**: eRC5831 [PMID: 33084795 DOI: 10.31744/einstein_journal/2020RC5831]
20 **Nelson AM**, Walk ST, Taube S, Taniuchi M, Houpt ER, Wobus CE, Young VB. Disruption of the human gut microbiota following Norovirus infection. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e48224 [PMID: 23118957 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0048224]
21 **Zuo T**, Zhang F, Lui GCY, Yeoh YK, Li AYL, Zhan H, Wan Y, Chung ACK, Cheung CP, Chen N, Lai CKC, Chen Z, Tso EYK, Fung KSC, Chan V, Ling L, Joynt G, Hui DSC, Chan FKL, Chan PKS, Ng SC. Alterations in Gut Microbiota of Patients With COVID-19 During Time of Hospitalization. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **159**: 944-955. e8 [PMID: 32442562 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.05.048]
22 **Zhang T**, Cui X, Zhao X, Wang J, Zheng J, Zheng G, Guo W, Cai C, He S, Xu Y. Detectable SARS-CoV-2 viral RNA in feces of three children during recovery period of COVID-19 pneumonia. *J Med Virol* 2020; **92**: 909-914 [PMID: 32222992 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.25795]
23 **Wei XS**, Wang X, Niu YR, Ye LL, Peng WB, Wang ZH, Yang WB, Yang BH, Zhang JC, Ma WL, Wang XR, Zhou Q. Diarrhea Is Associated With Prolonged Symptoms and Viral Carriage in Corona Virus Disease 2019. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 1753-1759. e2 [PMID: 32311512 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.04.030]
24 **Wu Y**, Guo C, Tang L, Hong Z, Zhou J, Dong X, Yin H, Xiao Q, Tang Y, Qu X, Kuang L, Fang X, Mishra N, Lu J, Shan H, Jiang G, Huang X. Prolonged presence of SARS-CoV-2 viral RNA in faecal samples. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 434-435 [PMID: 32199469 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(20)30083-2]
25 **Langford BJ**, So M, Raybardhan S, Leung V, Westwood D, MacFadden DR, Soucy JR, Daneman N. Bacterial co-infection and secondary infection in patients with COVID-19: a living rapid review and meta-analysis. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2020; **26**: 1622-1629 [PMID: 32711058 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmi.2020.07.016]

26 **Miranda C**, Silva V, Capita R, Alonso-Calleja C, Igrejas G, Poeta P. Implications of antibiotics use during the COVID-19 pandemic: present and future. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2020; **75**: 3413-3416 [PMID: 32830266 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkaa350]

27 **Voreades N**, Kozil A, Weir TL. Diet and the development of the human intestinal microbiome. *Front Microbiol* 2014; **5**: 494 [PMID: 25295033 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2014.00494]

28 **Savage DC**. Microbial ecology of the gastrointestinal tract. *Annu Rev Microbiol* 1977; **31**: 107-133 [PMID: 334036 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.mi.31.100177.000543]

29 **Lee SM**, Kim N, Park JH, Nam RH, Yoon K, Lee DH. Comparative Analysis of Ileal and Cecal Microbiota in Aged Rats. *J Cancer Prev* 2018; **23**: 70-76 [PMID: 30003066 DOI: 10.15430/JCP.2018.23.2.70]

30 **Fiocchi C**, Souza HSPD. Microbiota intestinal: sua importância e função. *J Bras Med* 2012; **100**: 30-38

31 **Torrazza RM**, Neu J. The developing intestinal microbiome and its relationship to health and disease in the neonate. *J Perinatol* 2011; **31**: S29-S34 [DOI: 10.1038/jp.2010.172]

32 **Ley RE**, Peterson DA, Gordon JI. Ecological and evolutionary forces shaping microbial diversity in the human intestine. *Cell* 2006; **124**: 837-848 [PMID: 16497592 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2006.02.017]

33 **Ma N**, Guo P, Zhang J, He T, Kim SW, Zhang G, Ma X. Nutrients Mediate Intestinal Bacteria-Mucosal Immune Crosstalk. *Front Immunol* 2018; **9**: 5 [PMID: 29416535 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00005]

34 **Okada H**, Kuhn C, Feillet H, Bach JF. The 'hygiene hypothesis' for autoimmune and allergic diseases: An update. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2010; **160**: 1-9 [PMID: 20415844 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2010.04139.x]

35 **Scudellari M**. News Feature: Cleaning up the hygiene hypothesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2017; **114**: 1433-1436 [PMID: 28196925 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1700688114]

36 **Ling Z**, Li Z, Liu X, Cheng Y, Luo Y, Tong X, Yuan L, Wang Y, Sun J, Li L, Xiang C. Altered fecal microbiota composition associated with food allergy in infants. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2014; **80**: 2546-2554 [PMID: 24532064 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.00003-14]

37 **Bisgaard H**, Li N, Bonnelykke K, Chawes BLK, Skov T, Paludan-Müller G, Stokholm J, Smith B, Krogfelt KA. Reduced diversity of the intestinal microbiota during infancy is associated with increased risk of allergic disease at school age. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; **128**: 646-652. e1-5 [PMID: 21782228 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaci.2011.04.060]

38 **Russell SL**, Gold MJ, Hartmann M, Willing BP, Thorson L, Wlodarska M, Gill N, Blanchet MR, Mohn WW, McNagny KM, Finlay BB. Early life antibiotic-driven changes in microbiota enhance susceptibility to allergic asthma. *EMBO Rep* 2012; **13**: 440-447 [PMID: 22422004 DOI: 10.1038/embor.2012.32]

39 **Saltzman ET**, Palacios T, Thomsen M, Vitetta L. Intestinal Microbiome Shifts, Dysbiosis, Inflammation, and Non-alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease. *Front Microbiol* 2018; **9**: 61 [PMID: 29441049 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2018.00061]

40 **Alberca GGF**, Sato MN, Alberca RW. Human microbiota and allergy. *Gen Intern Med Clin Innov* 2019; **4**: 1-5 [DOI: 10.15761/GIMCI.1000179]

41 **Anand S**, Mande SS. Diet, Microbiota and Gut-Lung Connection. *Front Microbiol* 2018; **9**: 2147 [PMID: 30283410 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2018.02147]

42 **Zuo T**, Liu Q, Zhang F, Lui GC, Tso EY, Yeoh YK, Chen Z, Boon SS, Chan FK, Chan PK, Ng SC. Depicting SARS-CoV-2 faecal viral activity in association with gut microbiota composition in patients with COVID-19. *Gut* 2021; **70**: 276-284 [PMID: 32690600 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-322294]

43 **Boulangé CL**, Neves AL, Chilloux J, Nicholson JK, Dumas ME. Impact of the gut microbiota on inflammation, obesity, and metabolic disease. *Genome Med* 2016; **8**: 42 [PMID: 27098727 DOI: 10.1186/s13073-016-0303-2]

44 **Ding RX**, Goh WR, Wu RN, Yue XQ, Luo X, Khine WWT, Wu JR, Lee YK. Revisit gut microbiota and its impact on human health and disease. *J Food Drug Anal* 2019; **27**: 623-631 [PMID: 31324279 DOI: 10.1016/j.jfda.2018.12.012]

45 **Kawai T**, Akira S. The roles of TLRs, RLRs and NLRs in pathogen recognition. *Int Immunol* 2009; **21**: 317-337 [PMID: 19246554 DOI: 10.1093/intimm/dxp017]

46 **Yiu JH**, Dorweiler B, Woo CW. Interaction between gut microbiota and toll-like receptor: from immunity to metabolism. *J Mol Med (Berl)* 2017; **95**: 13-20 [PMID: 27639584 DOI: 10.1007/s00109-016-1474-4]

47 **Zuo T**, Ng SC. The Gut Microbiota in the Pathogenesis and Therapeutics of Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Front Microbiol* 2018; **9**: 2247 [PMID: 30319571 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2018.02247]

48 **Fonseca DM Da**, Hand TW, Han SJ, Gerner MY, Zaretsky AG, Byrd AL, Harrison OJ, Ortiz AM, Quinones M, Trinchieri G, Brenchley JM, Brodsky IE, Germain RN, Randolph GJ, Belkaid Y. Microbiota-Dependent Sequelae of Acute Infection Compromise Tissue-Specific Immunity. *Cell* 2015; **163**: 354-366 [PMID: 26451485 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.08.030]

49 **Cieza RJ**, Cao AT, Cong Y, Torres AG. Immunomodulation for gastrointestinal infections. *Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther* 2012; **10**: 391-400 [PMID: 22397571 DOI: 10.1586/eri.11.176]

50 **Akasov RA**, Khaydukov EV. Mucosal-Associated Invariant T Cells as a Possible Target to Suppress Secondary Infections at COVID-19. *Front Immunol* 2020; **11**: 1896 [PMID: 32849648 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2020.01896]

51 **Mrityunjaya M**, Pavithra V, Neelam R, Janhavi P, Halami PM, Ravindra PV. Immune-Boosting,

Antioxidant and Anti-inflammatory Food Supplements Targeting Pathogenesis of COVID-19. *Front Immunol* 2020; **11**: 570122 [PMID: 33117359 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2020.570122]

52 **Alberca RW**, Teixeira FME, Beserra DR, de Oliveira EA, Andrade MMS, Pietrobon AJ, Sato MN. Perspective: The Potential Effects of Naringenin in COVID-19. *Front Immunol* 2020; **11**: 570919 [PMID: 33101291 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2020.570919]

53 **Taylor EW**, Radding W. Understanding Selenium and Glutathione as Antiviral Factors in COVID-19: Does the Viral M^{pro} Protease Target Host Selenoproteins and Glutathione Synthesis? *Front Nutr* 2020; **7**: 143 [PMID: 32984400 DOI: 10.3389/fnut.2020.00143]

54 **Sahin E**, Orhan C, Uckun FM, Sahin K. Clinical Impact Potential of Supplemental Nutrients as Adjuncts of Therapy in High-Risk COVID-19 for Obese Patients. *Front Nutr* 2020; **7**: 580504 [PMID: 33195370 DOI: 10.3389/fnut.2020.580504]

55 **Mertens E**, Peñalvo JL. The Burden of Malnutrition and Fatal COVID-19: A Global Burden of Disease Analysis. *Front Nutr* 2020; **7**: 619850 [PMID: 33553234 DOI: 10.3389/fnut.2020.619850]

56 **Olumi AF**. Commentary on "identification of 23 new prostate cancer susceptibility loci using the iCOGS custom genotyping array. *Urol Oncol* 2014; **32**: 211 [PMID: 24445293 DOI: 10.1016/j.urolonc.2013.08.019]

57 **Name JJ**, Souza ACR, Vasconcelos AR, Prado PS, Pereira CPM. Zinc, Vitamin D and Vitamin C: Perspectives for COVID-19 With a Focus on Physical Tissue Barrier Integrity. *Front Nutr* 2020; **7**: 606398 [PMID: 33365326 DOI: 10.3389/fnut.2020.606398]

58 **Leonel AJ**, Alvarez-Leite JI. Butyrate: implications for intestinal function. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care* 2012; **15**: 474-479 [PMID: 22797568 DOI: 10.1097/MCO.0b013e32835665fa]

59 **Wang S**, Xiao Y, Tian F, Zhao J, Zhang H, Zhai Q, Chen W. Rational use of prebiotics for gut microbiota alterations: Specific bacterial phylotypes and related mechanisms. *J Funct Foods* 2020; **66**: 103838 [DOI: 10.1016/j.jff.2020.103838]

60 **Davani-Davari D**, Negahdaripour M, Karimzadeh I, Seifan M, Mohkam M, Masoumi SJ, Berenjian A, Ghasemi Y. Prebiotics: Definition, Types, Sources, Mechanisms, and Clinical Applications. *Foods* 2019; **8** [PMID: 30857316 DOI: 10.3390/foods8030092]

61 **Viljanen M**, Kuitunen M, Haahtela T, Juntunen-Backman K, Korpela R, Savilahti E. Probiotic effects on faecal inflammatory markers and on faecal IgA in food allergic atopic eczema/dermatitis syndrome infants. *Pediatr Allergy Immunol* 2005; **16**: 65-71 [PMID: 15693914 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-3038.2005.00224.x]

62 **Pohjavuori E**, Viljanen M, Korpela R, Kuitunen M, Tiittanen M, Vaarala O, Savilahti E. Lactobacillus GG effect in increasing IFN-gamma production in infants with cow's milk allergy. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2004; **114**: 131-136 [PMID: 15241356 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaci.2004.03.036]

63 **Marschan E**, Kuitunen M, Kukkonen K, Poussa T, Sarnesto A, Haahtela T, Korpela R, Savilahti E, Vaarala O. Probiotics in infancy induce protective immune profiles that are characteristic for chronic low-grade inflammation. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2008; **38**: 611-618 [PMID: 18266878 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2222.2008.02942.x]

64 **Belenguer A**, Duncan SH, Calder AG, Holtrop G, Louis P, Lobley GE, Flint HJ. Two routes of metabolic cross-feeding between Bifidobacterium adolescentis and butyrate-producing anaerobes from the human gut. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2006; **72**: 3593-3599 [PMID: 16672507 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.72.5.3593-3599.2006]

65 **Falony G**, Vlachou A, Verbrugghe K, De Vuyst L. Cross-feeding between Bifidobacterium longum BB536 and acetate-converting, butyrate-producing colon bacteria during growth on oligofructose. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2006; **72**: 7835-7841 [PMID: 17056678 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.01296-06]

66 **Ze X**, Duncan SH, Louis P, Flint HJ. Ruminococcus bromii is a keystone species for the degradation of resistant starch in the human colon. *ISME J* 2012; **6**: 1535-1543 [PMID: 22343308 DOI: 10.1038/ismej.2012.4]

67 **Walker AW**, Duncan SH, McWilliam Leitch EC, Child MW, Flint HJ. pH and peptide supply can radically alter bacterial populations and short-chain fatty acid ratios within microbial communities from the human colon. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2005; **71**: 3692-3700 [PMID: 16000778 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.71.7.3692-3700.2005]

68 **Cox MA**, Jackson J, Stanton M, Rojas-Triana A, Bober L, Laverty M, Yang X, Zhu F, Liu J, Wang S, Monsma F, Vassileva G, Maguire M, Gustafson E, Bayne M, Chou CC, Lundell D, Jenh CH. Short-chain fatty acids act as antiinflammatory mediators by regulating prostaglandin E(2) and cytokines. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 5549-5557 [PMID: 19938193 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.15.5549]

69 **Xu M**, Jiang Z, Wang C, Li N, Bo L, Zha Y, Bian J, Zhang Y, Deng X. Acetate attenuates inflammasome activation through GPR43-mediated Ca^{2+}-dependent NLRP3 ubiquitination. *Exp Mol Med* 2019; **51**: 83 [PMID: 31337751 DOI: 10.1038/s12276-019-0276-5]

70 **Wang J**, Wei Z, Zhang X, Wang Y, Yang Z, Fu Y. Propionate Protects against Lipopolysaccharide-Induced Mastitis in Mice by Restoring Blood-Milk Barrier Disruption and Suppressing Inflammatory Response. *Front Immunol* 2017; **8**: 1108 [PMID: 28966615 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.01108]

71 **Thio CL**, Chi PY, Lai AC, Chang YJ. Regulation of type 2 innate lymphoid cell–dependent airway hyperreactivity by butyrate. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2018; **142:** 1867-1883. e12 [PMID: 29522844 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaci.2018.02.032]

72 **Singh N**, Gurav A, Sivaprakasam S, Brady E, Padia R, Shi H, Thangaraju M, Prasad PD, Manicassamy S, Munn DH, Lee JR, Offermanns S, Ganapathy V. Activation of Gpr109a, receptor

for niacin and the commensal metabolite butyrate, suppresses colonic inflammation and carcinogenesis. *Immunity* 2014; **40**: 128-139 [PMID: 24412617 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2013.12.007]

73 **Dalile B**, Van Oudenhove L, Vervliet B, Verbeke K. The role of short-chain fatty acids in microbiota-gut-brain communication. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **16**: 461-478 [PMID: 31123355 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-019-0157-3]

74 **Fang W**, Xue H, Chen X, Chen K, Ling W. Supplementation with Sodium Butyrate Modulates the Composition of the Gut Microbiota and Ameliorates High-Fat Diet-Induced Obesity in Mice. *J Nutr* 2019; **149**: 747-754 [PMID: 31004166 DOI: 10.1093/jn/nxy324]

75 **Sun M**, Wu W, Chen L, Yang W, Huang X, Ma C, Chen F, Xiao Y, Zhao Y, Yao S, Carpio VH, Dann SM, Zhao Q, Liu Z, Cong Y. Microbiota-derived short-chain fatty acids promote Th1 cell IL-10 production to maintain intestinal homeostasis. *Nat Commun* 2018; **9**: 3555 [PMID: 30177845 DOI: 10.1038/s41467-018-05901-2]

76 **Moore KW**, de Waal Malefyt R, Coffman RL, O'Garra A. Interleukin-10 and the interleukin-10 receptor. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2001; **19**: 683-765 [PMID: 11244051 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.19.1.683]

77 **Asadullah K**, Sterry W, Volk HD. Interleukin-10 therapy-Review of a new approach. *Pharmacol Rev* 2003; **55**: 241-269 [PMID: 12773629 DOI: 10.1124/pr.55.2.4]

78 **Ip WKE**, Hoshi N, Shouval DS, Snapper S, Medzhitov R. Anti-inflammatory effect of IL-10 medi **ated by** metabolic reprogramming of macrophages. *Science* 2017; **356**: 513-519 [PMID: 28473584 DOI: 10.1126/science.aal3535]

79 **Hill C**, Guarner F, Reid G, Gibson GR, Merenstein DJ, Pot B, Morelli L, Canani RB, Flint HJ, Salminen S, Calder PC, Sanders ME. Expert consensus document. The International Scientific Association for Probiotics and Prebiotics consensus statement on the scope and appropriate use of the term probiotic. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **11**: 506-514 [PMID: 24912386 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2014.66]

80 **Derrien M**, van Hylckama Vlieg JE. Fate, activity, and impact of ingested bacteria within the human gut microbiota. *Trends Microbiol* 2015; **23**: 354-366 [PMID: 25840765 DOI: 10.1016/j.tim.2015.03.002]

81 **O'Toole PW**, Cooney JC. Probiotic bacteria influence the composition and function of the intestinal microbiota. *Interdiscip Perspect Infect Dis* 2008; **2008**: 175285 [PMID: 19277099 DOI: 10.1155/2008/175285]

82 **Ki Cha B**, Mun Jung S, Hwan Choi C, Song ID, Woong Lee H, Joon Kim H, Hyuk J, Kyung Chang S, Kim K, Chung WS, Seo JG. The effect of a multispecies probiotic mixture on the symptoms and fecal microbiota in diarrhea-dominant irritable bowel syndrome: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2012; **46**: 220-227 [PMID: 22157240 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e31823712b1]

83 **Cox MJ**, Huang YJ, Fujimura KE, Liu JT, McKean M, Boushey HA, Segal MR, Brodie EL, Cabana MD, Lynch SV. Lactobacillus casei abundance is associated with profound shifts in the infant gut microbiome. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e8745 [PMID: 20090909 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0008745]

84 **McNulty NP**, Yatsunenko T, Hsiao A, Faith JJ, Muegge BD, Goodman AL, Henrissat B, Oozeer R, Cools-Portier S, Gobert G, Chervaux C, Knights D, Lozupone CA, Knight R, Duncan AE, Bain JR, Muehlbauer MJ, Newgard CB, Heath AC, Gordon JI. The impact of a consortium of fermented milk strains on the gut microbiome of gnotobiotic mice and monozygotic twins. *Sci Transl Med* 2011; **3**: 106ra106 [PMID: 22030749 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3002701]

85 **Lilly DM**, Stillwell RH. Probiotics: growth-promoting factors produced by microorganisms. *Science* 1965; **147**: 747-748 [PMID: 14242024 DOI: 10.1126/science.147.3659.747]

86 **Goldenberg JZ**, Yap C, Lytvyn L, Lo CK, Beardsley J, Mertz D, Johnston BC. Probiotics for the prevention of Clostridium difficile-associated diarrhea in adults and children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2017; **12**: CD006095 [PMID: 29257353 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD006095.pub4]

87 **Wu S**, Yoon S, Zhang YG, Lu R, Xia Y, Wan J, Petrof EO, Claud EC, Chen D, Sun J. Vitamin D receptor pathway is required for probiotic protection in colitis. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2015; **309**: G341-G349 [PMID: 26159695 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00105.2015]

88 **Tomosada Y**, Chiba E, Zelaya H, Takahashi T, Tsukida K, Kitazawa H, Alvarez S, Villena J. Nasally administered Lactobacillus rhamnosus strains differentially modulate respiratory antiviral immune responses and induce protection against respiratory syncytial virus infection. *BMC Immunol* 2013; **14**: 40 [PMID: 23947615 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2172-14-40]

89 **Kobayashi N**, Saito T, Uematsu T, Kishi K, Toba M, Kohda N, Suzuki T. Oral administration of heat-killed Lactobacillus pentosus strain b240 augments protection against influenza virus infection in mice. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2011; **11**: 199-203 [PMID: 21095259 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2010.11.019]

90 **Oh NS**, Joung JY, Lee JY, Kim Y. Probiotic and anti-inflammatory potential of Lactobacillus rhamnosus 4B15 and Lactobacillus gasseri 4M13 isolated from infant feces. *PLoS One* 2018; **13**: e0192021 [PMID: 29444150 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0192021]

91 **Castelli V**, Cimini A, Ferri C. Cytokine Storm in COVID-19: "When You Come Out of the Storm, You Won't Be the Same Person Who Walked in". *Front Immunol* 2020; **11**: 2132 [PMID: 32983172 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2020.02132]

92 **Plaza-Díaz J**, Ruiz-Ojeda FJ, Vilchez-Padial LM, Gil A. Evidence of the Anti-Inflammatory Effects of Probiotics and Synbiotics in Intestinal Chronic Diseases. *Nutrients* 2017; **9** [PMID: 28555037

DOI: 10.3390/nu9060555]
93 **Lehtoranta L**, Pitkäranta A, Korpela R. Probiotics in respiratory virus infections. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 2014; **33**: 1289-1302 [PMID: 24638909 DOI: 10.1007/s10096-014-2086-y]
94 **Xu K**, Cai H, Shen Y, Ni Q, Chen Y, Hu S, Li J, Wang H, Yu L, Huang H, Qiu Y, Wei G, Fang Q, Zhou J, Sheng J, Liang T, Li L. [Management of corona virus disease-19 (COVID-19): the Zhejiang experience]. *Zhejiang Da Xue Xue Bao Yi Xue Ban* 2020; **49**: 147-157 [PMID: 32096367 DOI: 10.3785/j.issn.1008-9292.2020.02.02]
95 **Yeoh YK**, Zuo T, Lui GC-Y, Zhang F, Liu Q, Li AY, Chung AC, Cheung CP, Tso EY, Fung KS, Chan V, Ling L, Joynt G, Hui DS-C, Chow KM, Ng SSS, Li TC-M, Ng RW, Yip TC, Wong GL-H, Chan FK, Wong CK, Chan PK, Ng SC. Gut microbiota composition reflects disease severity and dysfunctional immune responses in patients with COVID-19. *Gut* 2021; Online ahead of print [PMID: 33431578 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-323020]
96 **Schwiertz A**, Taras D, Schäfer K, Beijer S, Bos NA, Donus C, Hardt PD. Microbiota and SCFA in lean and overweight healthy subjects. *Obesity (Silver Spring)* 2010; **18**: 190-195 [PMID: 19498350 DOI: 10.1038/oby.2009.167]
97 **Namekawa J**, Takagi Y, Wakabayashi K, Nakamura Y, Watanabe A, Nagakubo D, Shirai M, Asai F. Effects of high-fat diet and fructose-rich diet on obesity, dyslipidemia and hyperglycemia in the WBN/Kob-Lepr^{fa} rat, a new model of type 2 diabetes mellitus. *J Vet Med Sci* 2017; **79**: 988-991 [PMID: 28442647 DOI: 10.1292/jvms.17-0136]
98 **Frost G**, Sleeth ML, Sahuri-Arisoylu M, Lizarbe B, Cerdan S, Brody L, Anastasovska J, Ghourab S, Hankir M, Zhang S, Carling D, Swann JR, Gibson G, Viardot A, Morrison D, Louise Thomas E, Bell JD. The short-chain fatty acid acetate reduces appetite *via* a central homeostatic mechanism. *Nat Commun* 2014; **5**: 3611 [PMID: 24781306 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms4611]
99 **Gao Z**, Yin J, Zhang J, Ward RE, Martin RJ, Lefevre M, Cefalu WT, Ye J. Butyrate improves insulin sensitivity and increases energy expenditure in mice. *Diabetes* 2009; **58**: 1509-1517 [PMID: 19366864 DOI: 10.2337/db08-1637]
100 **Ley RE**, Turnbaugh PJ, Klein S, Gordon JI. Microbial ecology: human gut microbes associated with obesity. *Nature* 2006; **444**: 1022-1023 [PMID: 17183309 DOI: 10.1038/4441022a]
101 **Smits SA**, Leach J, Sonnenburg ED, Gonzalez CG, Lichtman JS, Reid G, Knight R, Manjurano A, Changalucha J, Elias JE, Dominguez-Bello MG, Sonnenburg JL. Seasonal cycling in the gut microbiome of the Hadza hunter-gatherers of Tanzania. *Science* 2017; **357**: 802-806 [PMID: 28839072 DOI: 10.1126/science.aan4834]
102 **Mardinoglu A**, Wu H, Bjornson E, Zhang C, Hakkarainen A, Räsänen SM, Lee S, Mancina RM, Bergentall M, Pietiläinen KH, Söderlund S, Matikainen N, Ståhlman M, Bergh PO, Adiels M, Piening BD, Granér M, Lundbom N, Williams KJ, Romeo S, Nielsen J, Snyder M, Uhlén M, Bergström G, Perkins R, Marschall HU, Bäckhed F, Taskinen MR, Borén J. An Integrated Understanding of the Rapid Metabolic Benefits of a Carbohydrate-Restricted Diet on Hepatic Steatosis in Humans. *Cell Metab* 2018; **27**: 559-571. e5 [PMID: 29456073 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmet.2018.01.005]
103 **Deehan EC**, Duar RM, Armet AM, Perez-Muñoz ME, Jin M, Walter J. Modulation of the Gastrointestinal Microbiome with Nondigestible Fermentable Carbohydrates To Improve Human Health. *Microbiol Spectr* 2017; 5 [PMID: 28936943 DOI: 10.1128/microbiolspec.BAD-0019-2017]
104 **Negi S**, Pahari S, Bashir H, Agrewala JN. Gut Microbiota Regulates Mincle Mediated Activation of Lung Dendritic Cells to Protect Against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *Front Immunol* 2019; **10**: 1142 [PMID: 31231363 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01142]
105 **Frati F**, Salvatori C, Incorvaia C, Bellucci A, Di Cara G, Marcucci F, Esposito S. The role of the microbiome in asthma: The gut–lung axis. *Int J Mol Sci* 2018; **20** [PMID: 30598019 DOI: 10.3390/ijms20010123]
106 **Vieira RS**, Castoldi A, Basso PJ, Hiyane MI, Câmara NOS, Almeida RR. Butyrate Attenuates Lung Inflammation by Negatively Modulating Th9 Cells. *Front Immunol* 2019; **10**: 67 [PMID: 30761137 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00067]
107 **Hemarajata P**, Versalovic J. Effects of probiotics on gut microbiota: Mechanisms of intestinal immunomodulation and neuromodulation. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2013; **6**: 39-51 [PMID: 23320049 DOI: 10.1177/1756283X12459294]
108 **Zeng J**, Wang CT, Zhang FS, Qi F, Wang SF, Ma S, Wu TJ, Tian H, Tian ZT, Zhang SL, Qu Y, Liu LY, Li YZ, Cui S, Zhao HL, Du QS, Ma Z, Li CH, Li Y, Si M, Chu YF, Meng M, Ren HS, Zhang JC, Jiang JJ, Ding M, Wang YP. Effect of probiotics on the incidence of ventilator-associated pneumonia in critically ill patients: a randomized controlled multicenter trial. *Intensive Care Med* 2016; **42**: 1018-1028 [PMID: 27043237 DOI: 10.1007/s00134-016-4303-x]
109 **Morrow LE**, Kollef MH, Casale TB. Probiotic prophylaxis of ventilator-associated pneumonia: a blinded, randomized, controlled trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2010; **182**: 1058-1064 [PMID: 20522788 DOI: 10.1164/rccm.200912-1853OC]
110 **Wang J**, Li F, Wei H, Lian ZX, Sun R, Tian Z. Respiratory influenza virus infection induces intestinal immune injury *via* microbiota-mediated Th17 cell-dependent inflammation. *J Exp Med* 2014; **211**: 2397-2410 [PMID: 25366965 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20140625]
111 **Wiche Salinas TR**, Zheng B, Routy JP, Ancuta P. Targeting the interleukin-17 pathway to prevent acute respiratory distress syndrome associated with SARS-CoV-2 infection. *Respirology* 2020; **25**: 797-799 [PMID: 32557955 DOI: 10.1111/resp.13875]
112 **Gurczynski SJ**, Moore BB. IL-17 in the lung: the good, the bad, and the ugly. *Am J Physiol Lung*

Cell Mol Physiol 2018; **314**: L6-L16 [PMID: 28860146 DOI: 10.1152/ajplung.00344.2017]

113 **Song J**, Zeng M, Wang H, Qin C, Hou HY, Sun ZY, Xu SP, Wang GP, Guo CL, Deng YK, Wang ZC, Ma J, Pan L, Liao B, Du ZH, Feng QM, Liu Y, Xie JG, Liu Z. Distinct effects of asthma and COPD comorbidity on disease expression and outcome in patients with COVID-19. *Allergy* 2021; **76**: 483-496 [PMID: 32716553 DOI: 10.1111/all.14517]

114 **Markou P**, Apidianakis Y. Pathogenesis of intestinal Pseudomonas aeruginosa infection in patients with cancer. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol* 2014; **3**: 115 [PMID: 24432250 DOI: 10.3389/fcimb.2013.00115]

115 **Li J**, Casanova JL, Puel A. Mucocutaneous IL-17 immunity in mice and humans: host defense vs. excessive inflammation. *Mucosal Immunol* 2018; **11**: 581-589 [PMID: 29186107 DOI: 10.1038/mi.2017.97]

116 **Trompette A**, Gollwitzer ES, Pattaroni C, Lopez-Mejia IC, Riva E, Pernot J, Ubags N, Fajas L, Nicod LP, Marsland BJ. Dietary Fiber Confers Protection against Flu by Shaping Ly6c$^-$ Patrolling Monocyte Hematopoiesis and CD8$^+$ T Cell Metabolism. *Immunity* 2018; **48**: 992-1005. e8 [PMID: 29768180 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2018.04.022]

117 **Jakobsdottir G**, Jädert C, Holm L, Nyman ME. Propionic and butyric acids, formed in the caecum of rats fed highly fermentable dietary fibre, are reflected in portal and aortic serum. *Br J Nutr* 2013; **110**: 1565-1572 [PMID: 23531375 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114513000809]

118 **Miyoshi M**, Sakaki H, Usami M, Iizuka N, Shuno K, Aoyama M, Usami Y. Oral administration of tributyrin increases concentration of butyrate in the portal vein and prevents lipopolysaccharide-induced liver injury in rats. *Clin Nutr* 2011; **30**: 252-258 [PMID: 21051124 DOI: 10.1016/j.clnu.2010.09.012]

119 **Beauvieux MC**, Roumes H, Robert N, Gin H, Rigalleau V, Gallis JL. Butyrate ingestion improves hepatic glycogen storage in the re-fed rat. *BMC Physiol* 2008; **8**: 19 [PMID: 18847460 DOI: 10.1186/1472-6793-8-19]

120 **Shukla G**, Bhatia R, Sharma A. Prebiotic inulin supplementation modulates the immune response and restores gut morphology in Giardia duodenalis-infected malnourished mice. *Parasitol Res* 2016; **115**: 4189-4198 [PMID: 27473837 DOI: 10.1007/s00436-016-5196-x]

121 **Waller AP**, Geor RJ, Spriet LL, Heigenhauser GJ, Lindinger MI. Oral acetate supplementation after prolonged moderate intensity exercise enhances early muscle glycogen resynthesis in horses. *Exp Physiol* 2009; **94**: 888-898 [PMID: 19429643 DOI: 10.1113/expphysiol.2009.047068]

122 **Jiehao C**, Jin X, Daojiong L, Zhi Y, Lei X, Zhenghai Q, Yuehua Z, Hua Z, Ran J, Pengcheng L, Xiangshi W, Yanling G, Aimei X, He T, Hailing C, Chuning W, Jingjing L, Jianshe W, Mei Z. A Case Series of Children With 2019 Novel Coronavirus Infection: Clinical and Epidemiological Features. *Clin Infect Dis* 2020; **71**: 1547-1551 [PMID: 32112072 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciaa198]

123 **Lo IL**, Lio CF, Cheong HH, Lei CI, Cheong TH, Zhong X, Tian Y, Sin NN. Evaluation of SARS-CoV-2 RNA shedding in clinical specimens and clinical characteristics of 10 patients with COVID-19 in Macau. *Int J Biol Sci* 2020; **16**: 1698-1707 [PMID: 32226287 DOI: 10.7150/ijbs.45357]

124 **Peng L**, Liu J, Xu W, Luo Q, Chen D, Lei Z, Huang Z, Li X, Deng K, Lin B, Gao Z. SARS-CoV-2 can be detected in urine, blood, anal swabs, and oropharyngeal swabs specimens. *J Med Virol* 2020; **92**: 1676-1680 [PMID: 32330305 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.25936]

125 **Xu Y**, Li X, Zhu B, Liang H, Fang C, Gong Y, Guo Q, Sun X, Zhao D, Shen J, Zhang H, Liu H, Xia H, Tang J, Zhang K, Gong S. Characteristics of pediatric SARS-CoV-2 infection and potential evidence for persistent fecal viral shedding. *Nat Med* 2020; **26**: 502-505 [PMID: 32284613 DOI: 10.1038/s41591-020-0817-4]

126 **Chen W**, Lan Y, Yuan X, Deng X, Li Y, Cai X, Li L, He R, Tan Y, Gao M, Tang G, Zhao L, Wang J, Fan Q, Wen C, Tong Y, Tang Y, Hu F, Li F, Tang X. Detectable 2019-nCoV viral RNA in blood is a strong indicator for the further clinical severity. *Emerg Microbes Infect* 2020; **9**: 469-473 [PMID: 32102625 DOI: 10.1080/22221751.2020.1732837]

127 **Han C**, Duan C, Zhang S, Spiegel B, Shi H, Wang W, Zhang L, Lin R, Liu J, Ding Z, Hou X. Digestive Symptoms in COVID-19 Patients With Mild Disease Severity: Clinical Presentation, Stool Viral RNA Testing, and Outcomes. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2020; **115**: 916-923 [PMID: 32301761 DOI: 10.14309/ajg.0000000000000664]

128 **Wang W**, Xu Y, Gao R, Lu R, Han K, Wu G, Tan W. Detection of SARS-CoV-2 in Different Types of Clinical Specimens. *JAMA* 2020; **323**: 1843-1844 [PMID: 32159775 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2020.3786]

129 **Zhang N**, Gong Y, Meng F, Shi Y, Wang J, Mao P, Chuai X, Bi Y, Yang P, Wang F. Comparative study on virus shedding patterns in nasopharyngeal and fecal specimens of COVID-19 patients. *Sci China Life Sci* 2020 [PMID: 32778998 DOI: 10.1007/s11427-020-1783-9]

130 **Zhang W**, Du RH, Li B, Zheng XS, Yang XL, Hu B, Wang YY, Xiao GF, Yan B, Shi ZL, Zhou P. Molecular and serological investigation of 2019-nCoV infected patients: implication of multiple shedding routes. *Emerg Microbes Infect* 2020; **9**: 386-389 [PMID: 32065057 DOI: 10.1080/22221751.2020.1729071]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2021 April 7; 27(13): 1267-1282

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1267

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Metabolic complications of hepatitis C virus infection

Rahul Chaudhari, Sherouk Fouda, Ashik Sainu, Joseph M Pappachan

ORCID number: Rahul Chaudhari 0000-0002-0265-8100; Sherouk Fouda 0000-0001-8227-4571; Ashik Sainu 0000-0002-9508-2293; Joseph M Pappachan 0000-0003-0886-5255.

Author contributions: Chaudhari R and Fouda S performed extensive literature review and drafted the manuscript and share the first authorship jointly; Sainu A added points especially the hepatologic side of the work with additional literature review and revision; Pappachan JM conceived the idea, inputted additional scientific points especially the metabolic aspects, revised the entire work critically, and approved the final version for publication.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Dr. Pappachan and co-authors of this paper have nothing to disclose.

Rahul Chaudhari, Department of Medicine, Pennsylvania Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania, Pennsylvania, PA 19104, United States

Sherouk Fouda, School of Health and Biomedical Sciences, RMIT University, Melbourne VIC 3000, Australia

Ashik Sainu, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Aster Oman Hospital, Al Ghubra, Muscat OM 133, Oman

Joseph M Pappachan, Department of Endocrinology and Metabolism, Lancashire Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust, Preston PR2 9HT, United Kingdom

Joseph M Pappachan, Faculty of Science, Manchester Metropolitan University, Manchester M15 6BH, United Kingdom

Joseph M Pappachan, Faculty of Biology, Medicine and Health, The University of Manchester, Manchester M13 9PL, United Kingdom

Corresponding author: Joseph M Pappachan, FRCP, MD, Consultant Physician-Scientist, Honorary Research Fellow, Senior Researcher, Department of Endocrinology and Metabolism, Lancashire Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust, Royal Preston Hospital, Preston PR2 9HT, United Kingdom. drpappachan@yahoo.co.in

Abstract

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is a systemic disease that is implicated in multiple extrahepatic organ dysfunction contributing to its protean manifestations. HCV is associated with diverse extrahepatic disorders including atherosclerosis, glucose and lipid metabolic disturbances, alterations in the iron metabolic pathways, and lymphoproliferative diseases over and above the traditional liver manifestations of cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. The orchestration between HCV major proteins and the liver-muscle-adipose axis, poses a major burden on the global health of human body organs, if not adequately addressed. The close and inseparable associations between chronic HCV infection, metabolic disease, and cardiovascular disorders are specifically important considering the increasing prevalence of obesity and metabolic syndrome, and their economic burden to patients, the healthcare systems, and society. Cellular and molecular mechanisms governing the interplay of these organs and tissues in health and disease are therefore of significant interest. The coexistence of metabolic disorders and chronic hepatitis C infection also enhances the progression to liver fibrosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. The presence of metabolic disorders is believed to influence the chronicity and virulence of HCV

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Endocrinology and metabolism

Country/Territory of origin: United Kingdom

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): A, A, A
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: January 23, 2021
Peer-review started: January 23, 2021
First decision: February 10, 2021
Revised: February 10, 2021
Accepted: March 12, 2021
Article in press: March 12, 2021
Published online: April 7, 2021

P-Reviewer: Enosawa S, Fan X, Liu XL, Meng Q
S-Editor: Zhang L
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Ma YJ

leading to liver disease progression. This comprehensive review highlights current knowledge on the metabolic manifestations of hepatitis C and the potential pathways in which these metabolic changes can influence the natural history of the disease.

Key Words: Chronic hepatitis C infection; Insulin resistance; Metabolic syndrome; Cardiovascular diseases; Fatty liver; Diabetes mellitus

Core Tip: Available evidence proves a strong association between hepatitis C virus (HCV) and metabolic complications such as hyperlipidemia, hepatic steatosis, insulin resistance, metabolic syndrome, and diabetes mellitus. *De novo* development of insulin resistance and hepatic steatosis in chronic HCV infection influences the disease progression in the liver and enhances overall morbidity and mortality. The influence of metabolic diseases on HCV infection can increase disease severity. The interplay between HCV major proteins and the liver-muscle-adipose axis is complex and still not fully elucidated. Coexistence of metabolic diseases such as diabetes mellitus and HCV infection are also known to result in adverse outcomes of both disorders. There is evidence that successful treatment halts the progression of liver disease, but more studies are required on how treatment influences the metabolic manifestations.

Citation: Chaudhari R, Fouda S, Sainu A, Pappachan JM. Metabolic complications of hepatitis C virus infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(13): 1267-1282
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i13/1267.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1267

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis C virus-beyond a hepatotropic infection

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) is a major cause of liver disease worldwide, with 130-170 million people infected according to the World Health Organization[1]. Approximately 10%-20% of chronically infected patients experience persistent inflammation and develop liver cirrhosis and eventually hepatocellular carcinoma[1]. Well recognized extrahepatic manifestations include but not limited to; glucose and lipid metabolic disorders, atherogenic disease, mixed cryoglobulinemia, lymphoproliferative disorders, renal disease, insulin resistance (IR), type 2 diabetes (T2DM), sicca syndrome, rheumatoid arthritis-like polyarthritis, and autoimmune diseases[2,3]. Moreover, patients with chronic HCV are at an increased risk of developing metabolic bone disease and osteopenia as it was observed in more than 50% of infected subjects[4]. The deleterious effects of metabolic complications as a result of HCV infection is mainly due to impairments in glucose and lipid metabolism[5]. Independent of the stage of hepatic fibrosis, IR and DM are more prevalent in the course of HCV infection and post liver transplantation in chronic HCV (CHC) infected patients[6-8]. Interestingly, prevalence of HCV infection among diabetic patients is higher than in the age-matched general population[9]. CHC induces systemic and hepatic inflammation that contribute to the development of atherosclerosis through elevated levels of pro-atherogenic cytokines and chemokines[10]. Atherosclerosis is also found to be related to the high tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α)/adiponectin ratio that is found in HCV-infected patients and is related to IR[11].

The systemic burden of hepatitis C infection surpasses its liver disease burden due to its metabolic spectrum and it is plausible that, the virus, through disruptions of glucose and lipid homeostasis, stimulates other mechanisms of liver damage and contributes to the pathogenesis of extrahepatic disorders[12]. Therefore, it is imperative to have thorough understanding on the metabolic impact of this enigmatic disease on human body for optimal management of the disease and its consequences. This evidence-based review highlights the current understanding on CHC infection and its metabolic complications.

IMPACT OF CHRONIC HEPATITIS C ON MAJOR METABOLIC ORGANS

Most HCV infected people are unaware of their condition due to its asymptomatic nature. About one-third of infections resolve spontaneously in the first year, the remaining infections persists and become chronic. CHC infection can progress to end-stage liver disease, including cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). HCV can also cause serious problems in organ systems other than the liver, including cryoglobulinemic vasculitis, metabolic bone disease, kidney disease, cardiovascular disease, and hematologic malignancies. In the United States, HCV is one of the leading causes of end-stage liver disease requiring liver transplantation, and the mortality attributed to HCV is expected to continue rising during the next 10 years. Figure 1 illustrates the HCV-related metabolic disturbances mainly targeting the liver, skeletal muscle and adipose tissue as current evidence suggests[13].

METABOLIC EFFECTS OF CHRONIC HEPATITIS C INFECTION ON LIVER

Hepatic steatosis in the setting of HCV viral infection is considered as a distinct entity with specific clinical and prognostic implications. The prevalence of hepatic steatosis in patients with HCV infection is 55.54%, which remains higher than that in non-infected individuals[14]. Contrary to non-alcoholic fatty liver disease being associated with hyperlipidemia, CHC is linked with hypolipidemia including hypo-cholesterolemia, hypo-triglyceridemia and lower low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol levels. Co-existence of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in HCV infected patients is associated with features of metabolic syndrome (MetS), and is an independent risk factor for advanced liver fibrosis[15-17].

In patients with CHC, genotype 3 has the highest prevalence of hepatic steatosis (40%-86%) while patients with other genotypes is around 50%[18,19]. A direct association exists between genotype 3 HCV (G3-HCV) and the development of steatosis, while in non-genotype 3 CHC, IR plays a key role in the pathophysiology of hepatic steatosis[20,21].

The term "viral steatosis" is used particularly with G3-HCV infection when hepatic steatosis is related with viral load and not MetS and "metabolic steatosis" occurs secondary to IR/MetS in the genotypes G1, G2, and G4[22-24]. Studies in patients infected with G3-HCV have demonstrated that steatosis can improve and even disappear following successful antiviral treatment with interferon and ribavirin; but data from directly acting antivirals (DAAs) are limited[25,26]. The risk of progression of fibrosis is increased with pre-existing steatosis, and a reduced rate of response to antiviral treatment[27-29]. CHC is implicated in the development and progression of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH). NASH is a chronic state of liver injury that can be caused by CHC infection or coexist with HCV and biopsies have proven that the association leads to advanced fibrosis and is a predictor of liver disease progression in patients with CHC regardless of the genotype[30,31]. Both "viral" and "metabolic" steatosis, stimulates the progression of fibrosis and liver disease influenced by actions of increased insulin levels and inflammatory cytokines on hepatic stellate cells (Figure 2).

HEPATITIS C VIRUS AND IRON METABOLISM

Iron is a central component for HCV virus replication and translation, though it is debatable whether iron promotes or suppresses HCV viral replication. High serum ferritin levels, associated with hepatic iron overload, were evident in CHC patients and considered an independent risk factor for advanced liver fibrosis[32,33]. Alterations of iron metabolism in CHC is believed to be caused by a reduction in the level of hepcidin. Hepcidin, a peptide hormone, is critical in the strict regulation of iron levels under homeostatic states. Though the underlying mechanisms remains unclear, the current opinion propose that all HCV proteins regulates hepcidin expression through signal transducer and activator of transcription 3, mitogen-activated protein kinase, or bone morphogenetic protein/Sma and Mad proteins signaling pathways, and the altered expression of other related genes[34]. Due to the ability of different factors influencing the levels of serum ferritin levels, it serves as an important indicator of hepatic iron overload but only a liver biopsy can confirm the diagnosis. It is vital to further our understanding on how HCV affects iron metabolism and whether it can be used as a therapeutic tool to prevent disease progression.

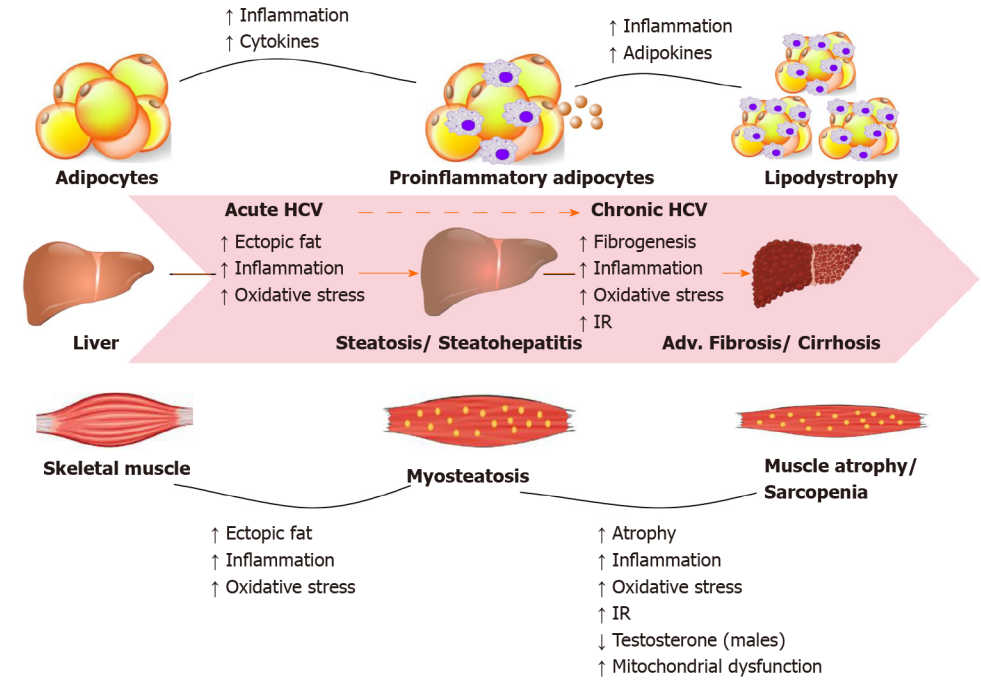


Figure 1 Changes in liver, adipose tissue, and muscle with hepatitis C virus infection. Adv: Advanced; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; IR: Insulin resistance.

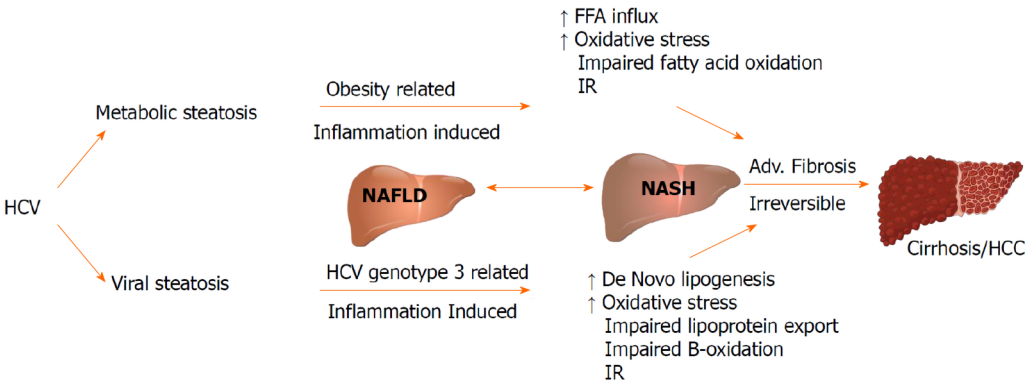


Figure 2 Hepatic steatosis development in hepatitis C virus infection. Adv: Advanced; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; NAFLD: Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; FFA: Free fatty acid; IR: Insulin resistance; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma.

EFFECTS OF CHRONIC HEPATITIS C INFECTION ON SKELETAL MUSCLE

CHC infection is associated with skeletal muscle mass loss, sarcopenia, increased intramyocellular lipid deposition, myosteatosis, and low muscle strength[35-37]. A recent Japanese study by Fukui *et al*[38] demonstrated that skeletal muscle mass decreases in accordance with liver disease progression in male patients with CHC. Sarcopenia, loss of muscle mass and function, has a high incidence rate in patients with cirrhosis (30%-70%) favoring atrophy of type II fast-twitch glycolytic fibers[39,40]. Myosteatosis, is characterized by increased lipid accumulation within muscle fibers and is a complication of hepatitis C Cirrhosis predisposing individuals to muscle atrophy over time[41]. High BMI, IR, diabetes, steatosis, inflammation, increased oxidative stress and lipotoxicity are all independent risk factors that predispose CHC patients to skeletal muscle disorders[42-47]. Therefore, a comprehensive sarcopenia evaluation assessing skeletal muscle mass, muscle strength and physical performance can provide clinicians the optimal risk assessment tools and therapeutic strategies for improving patient's quality of life and to halt the disease progression.

It is widely recognized that testosterone is highly associated with increased muscle

strength and mass[48]. Chaudhury *et al*[49] demonstrated that male CHC patients with hepatic dysfunction/cirrhosis suffered from low levels of free and total testosterone regardless of the treatment regimens (interferon and ribavirin (6%); interferon, ribavirin, and DAAs (18%); ribavirin and DAAs (14%); and DAAs only (62%)) received by patients[50]. The decrease in testosterone was sustained after viral clearance suggesting that testosterone metabolism in the liver is most likely impaired by liver dysfunction in these patients. Neff *et al*[51] was able to show that administration of testosterone hormone to HCV-patients suffering from liver failure increases muscle strength, enhance albumin synthesis, and improve survival post-liver transplant[49,52-54].

The association between CHC infection of the liver as well as hepatic dysfunction and muscle loss is well documented, though not fully understood. The triad complex association can be linked through increased inflammation, oxidative stress, alterations in the endocrine system (IR, testosterone levels), hepatic steatosis, and multiple factors involved in muscle depletion. A better understanding of the etiology of sarcopenia and skeletal muscle mass loss in HCV infected patients and the appropriate management strategies are expected to improve patient outcomes.

HEPATITIS C VIRUS INFECTION AND ADIPOSE TISSUE

Following liver and skeletal muscles, adipose tissue is another major site of IR in CHC infections[51]. Adipose tissue is considered as an important endocrine organ which releases biologically active polypeptides including adipose tissue specific adipokines like leptin and adiponectin and non-adipose tissue specific adipokines such as plasminogen activator inhibitor I (PAI-1)[55]. Adiponectin (an insulin-sensitizing hormone in muscle and liver) and leptin are most abundant in subcutaneous fat while PAI-1 is found in high levels in extracellular matrix[56,57]. Together, leptin, adiponectin and PAI-1 are the abundant adipokines which regulate the body lipid and glucose metabolism *via* the adipo-insular axis[58]. Alterations in adipokine levels/function are a major culprit for multiple complications including the risk of developing T2DM, cardiovascular disease and neurodegenerative disorders.

An interplay between HCV virion and adipocytes is suggested by a strong relationship between HCV viral load and subcutaneous (not visceral) fat[59]. Patients with CHC have significant subcutaneous adipose tissue insulin resistance in comparison with BMI-matched controls. Lim *et al*[58] suggested that that viral eradication improves global, hepatic, and adipose tissue insulin sensitivity. Serum levels of adiponectin and leptins even though associated with IR, HCV associated IR is predominantly a cytokine-independent direct virus-specific effect[60].

Though data is limited, new adipokines have an important role in the regulation of insulin sensitivity in CHC. Vaspin (visceral adipose tissue-derived serpin; seroinA12) has been found to improve insulin sensitivity and glucose tolerance and down regulate TNF-α synthesis[61-63]. The levels of serum vaspin are significantly decreased in chronic HCV infected patients without advanced fibrosis and increased in cases of advanced fibrosis suggesting vaspin to be a compensatory mechanism switch in HCV associated IR. However, no such association was found between serum vaspin level and viral load or homeostatic model assessment of IR values[64]. The level of another adipokine, visfatin, also increases in CHC and is inversely associated with inflammatory activity[65]. Visfatin exerts insulin like effect stimulating insulin receptor substrate-1 (IRS-1) phosphorylation and the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARγ) expression but it also potentiates expression of interleukin-6 and TNF-α like adhesion molecules[65,66]. Chimerin, another adipokine thought to be related to IR in CHC infection, inhibits the synthesis of TNF-α and interleukin-6 and ameliorates IRS-1 phosphorylation, to improve insulin sensitivity of adipocytes and to enhance adiponectin synthesis[67,68].

HEPATITIS C VIRUS AND LIPID METABOLISM

HCV regulates the host factor diacylglycerol acyltransferase-1 to promote the biogenesis of lipid droplets, and the HCV core protein recruit nonstructural protein 5A (NS5A) that carries HCV ribonucleic acid from the replication complex on the endoplasmic reticulum-derived membranous web to lipid droplets[69]. The enveloped viral particles may be simultaneously packaged into endoplasmic reticulum luminal lipid droplets in the very low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (VLDL) precursor and eventually the VLDL-dependent pathway secretes it into the circulation as lipo-viral

particles[70,71]. Therefore, HCV infection is implicated in disrupted lipoprotein homeostasis due to impairment of the VLDL-releasing pathway which is one of the driving mechanisms of hepatic steatosis[72]. Derangement of lipid metabolism in HCV infection plays a role in hepatic steatosis, dyslipidemia, and hypobetalipoproteinemia. The HCV core and NS5A proteins interact with apolipoprotein (apo) A, apo A II and apo E. An increased levels of ApoC-III has been found in HCV lipo-viral particles that may inhibit the activity of lipoprotein lipase, disturbing the intravascular catabolism of triglyceride-rich lipoproteins[73-75]. HCV may modulate lipid metabolism and promote the synthesis of saturated fatty acids by regulating the enzymes involved in lipid synthesis[76,77]. Poly-unsaturated fatty acids supplementation counteracts the effects of HCV-induced lipid alterations and inhibits HCV formation[78]. Previous treatment with interferon-based antiviral therapy could reverse the hypocholesterolaemia induced by HCV. It has been shown that cholesterol and low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C) levels rapidly recover following viral clearance or sustained virologic response indicating that large amounts of lipids released from the liver into blood circulation may increase levels of cholesterol and LDL-C, resulting in the hydrolysis of triglycerides[79]. More studies are needed to delineate the pathways and potential therapeutic targets.

CHRONIC HEPATITIS C VIRUS AND GLUCOSE METABOLISM

CHC infection is closely associated with alterations of glucose metabolism from the early stages of infection, prior to the development of significant hepatic fibrosis[80]. In patients infected with HCV, total serum fasting blood glucose levels are found to be higher than that in healthy controls[81]. Clinical studies, both prospective and retrospective, showed a two-fold increased risk of developing insulin resistance and T2DM in HCV-infected patients even after correction of confounding factors[82].

The mechanism by which HCV causes glucose metabolism derangement resulting in T2DM is not fully understood. The proposed mechanisms from experimental studies in mice suggest downregulation of glucose transporter 2 receptors causing impaired hepatic glucose uptake, down-regulation of insulin receptor substrate 2 expression [suppression of cytokine signaling (SOCS)-3-dependent mechanism] causing altered hepatic insulin receptor cascade and impaired insulin-driven hepatic neoglucogenesis switch to glycolysis, as well as a defective insulin-driven shutdown of gluconeogenesis resulting in higher endogenous glucose production. Also alterations of the forkhead box O1 phosphorylation and nuclear exclusion by HCV proteins is implicated in T2DM development[83].

There is some evidence to suggest that HCV infected individuals are at risk of developing Type 1 diabetes mellitus through autoimmunity with some studies pointing towards pancreatic autoimmunity developing after Interferon treatment[84]. Many epidemiologic studies have found an association between T2DM and HCV infection possibly due to an interplay of multiple factors including direct viral effects, cytokine milieu, IR *etc*.[85] T2DM can accelerate the natural course of HCV-induced liver disease causing higher risk of fibrosis, cirrhosis, and hepatocellular carcinoma[86]. In patients with CHC infection and T2DM, significant improvement was noted in their diabetes status after HCV eradication with treatment[87-90]. The patients who did not achieve sustained virological response had a higher risk of T2DM[91-96]. Figure 3 illustrates the deleterious effects of HCV on glucose and lipid metabolism.

HEPATITIS C VIRUS AND INSULIN RESISTANCE: CENTRAL AND PERIPHERAL PATHWAYS

HCV proteins that are mainly involved in IR include core proteins, Serine protease and nonstructural viral proteins NS5A and NS5B that contribute to the formation of capsid, down-regulation of interferon-stimulated genes and polymerase activity. HCV induces IR both through multiple pathways and appears to depend on viral load and specifically genotypes G 1, 2 and 4[97].

In the direct mechanism, HCV proteins interact with various components of the insulin signaling pathway disrupting the signaling process of insulin in the hepatocytes. This leads to overexpression of protein phosphatase 2A and SOCS-3, and down regulates the expression of PPAR and IRS causing IR directly. HCV infection enhances hepatic gluconeogenesis through forkhead box O1-dependent pathway and

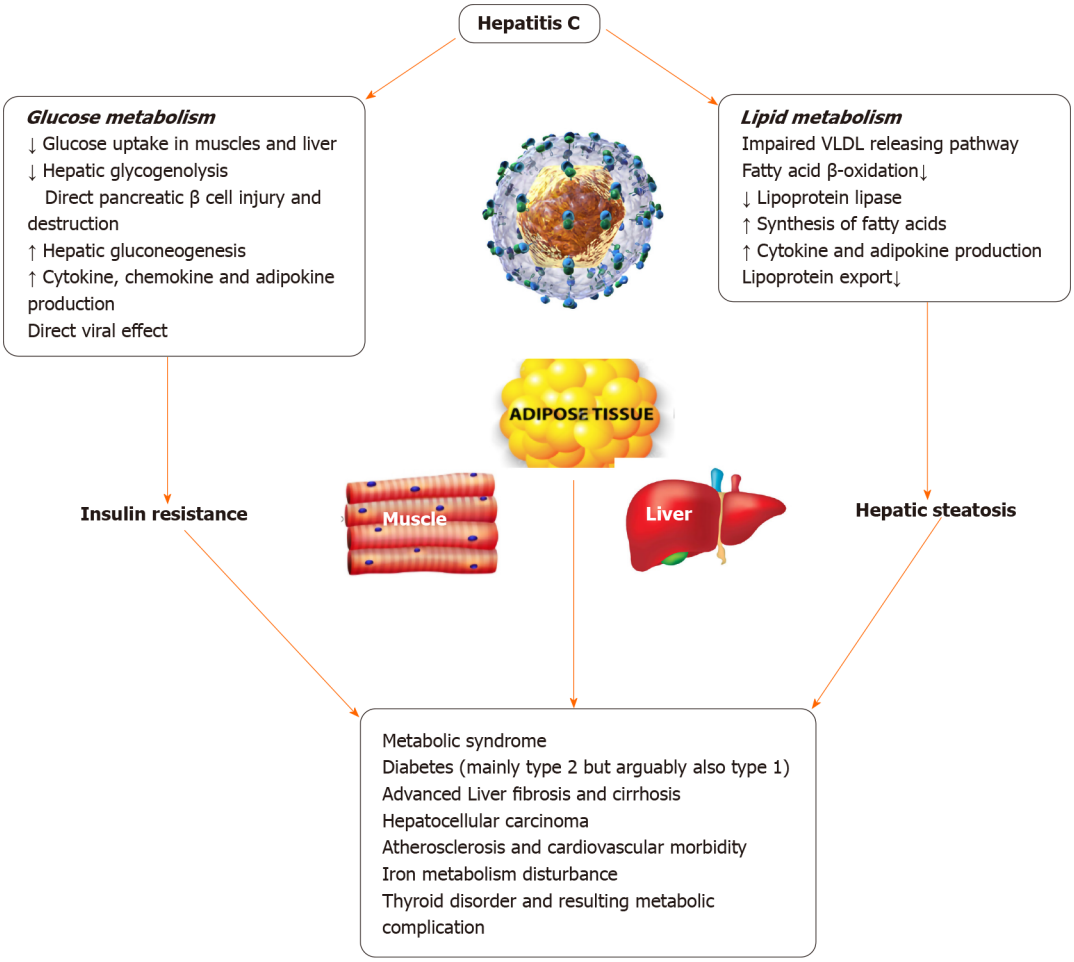


Figure 3 Impact of hepatitis C virus on glucose and lipid metabolism.

suppresses the cell surface expression of glucose transporter 2, resulting in reduced glucose uptake with the help of HCV NS5A protein that plays important roles in these two independent pathways. Any disruption in insulin signaling results in various pathophysiological changes, including glucose intolerance, obesity, dyslipidemia, hypertension, and development of T2DM[98-100]. The mechanism of insulin impairment appears HCV genotype specific, as core protein expression of G3 led to upregulation of SOCS-7 and downregulation of PPARγ, while the core protein from G1 activated mammalian target of rapamycin and induced phosphorylation of IRS-1 at inhibitory serine residues[101]. However, activation of SOCS family appeared to be common mechanism for all major genotypes to induce IR, including genotype 1 as the mammalian target of rapamycin activating variant appeared to be infrequent among known isolates[102-107].

Peripheral IR is the deficits in insulin induced glucose uptake into target tissues (adipose and muscle tissues). IR in CHC infection is thought to primarily affect muscle tissue making it a notable paradigm of IR. Mangia *et al*[106] showed that peripheral insulin resistance and resulting T2DM does not develop for at least first 5 years of infection with HCV suggesting the role of chronic infection in the development of IR rather than acute infection[107]. The pathways of lipid metabolism derangements and IR induced by HCV proteins and host cells opens up potential future treatment options scope for more studies[107,108].

The main PPAR nuclear receptors expressed in the liver that regulates glucose and lipid metabolism, influence cellular differentiation and proliferation as well as regulate the inflammatory process, include PPARα and PPARγ alongside retinoid X receptor. PPARα gene expression in the liver is decreased by 86% in the course of CHC infection[109]. Studies demonstrated a sharp decrease in the hepatic PPARγ expression in G3 CHC patients compared to those with G1 HCV[109-114].

The major pathways by which CHC infection induce insulin resistance are shown in the Table 1.

Table 1 The role of major hepatitis C virus proteins in insulin resistance development

HCV core protein	Nonstructural protein 3 (NS3)	Nonstructural protein 5 (NS5)
Activates members of SOCS family; Genotype 1: Activates mTOR and induces phosphorylation of IRS-1; Genotype 3: Upregulates SOCS-7 and downregulates PPARγ	NOX2 activation	Increasing the ROS within the mitochondria
↓ PPARα gene expression in the liver	↑ ROS	Induces ER stress → ↑ protein phosphatase 2A (PP2A)
↓ Assembly of VLDL	Through ROS → Activation of transcriptional factors such as NF-κB and STAT-3 → more advanced stages of chronic hepatitis → oncogenesis	Dephosphorylation and inactivation of Akt
Induces lipogenesis and gluconeogenesis		Stimulates the NF-κB-mediated increase in proinflammatory cytokines
↓ IFN-α production; ↓ IFN-α stimulated genes		Up-regulation of PP2Ac → hypomethylation of STAT-1 → ↑ association of STAT-1 with PIAS1PIAS1 → impairing the transcriptional activation of IFN-stimulated genes
Activation of the pattern-recognition receptor TLR2 → ↑ production of profibrotic factors. *i.e.* TGF-β, procollagen 1, and MMPs		Stimulates the NF-κB → increase in proinflammatory cytokines (*i.e.* IL-6, TNF-α)
Activates the PA28γ → ↓ IRS-1 tyrosine phosphorylation and IRS-2 expression and TNF-α promoter activation		Dephosphorylation of PKB/Akt → inhibition of insulin signaling
Induces TNF α → portal or periportal inflammation		
Impedes insulin-mediated FoxO1 translocation affecting glucose metabolism		

Akt: Protein kinase B; PKB: Protein kinase B; ER: Endoplasmic reticulum; FoxO1: Forkhead box protein O1; IFN-α: Interferon alpha; IL-6: Interleukin-6; IRS-1: Insulin receptor substrate 1; IRS-2: Insulin receptor substrate 2; MMPs: Matrix metalloproteinases; mTOR: Mammalian target of rapamycin; NF-κB: Nuclear factor kappa light chain; NOX2: NADPH oxidase 2; NS3: Serine protease; NS5: Nonstructural viral proteins NS5A and NS5B; PA28γ: Proteasomal activator; PIAS1: Protein inhibitor of activated STAT 1; PP2Ac: Catalytic subunit of protein phosphatase 2A; ROS: Reactive oxygen species; SOCS: Suppressors of cytokine signaling; SOCS-7: Suppressor Of cytokine signaling 7; STAT-1: Signal transducer and activator of transcription 1; TGF-β: Transforming growth factor beta; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor a; TLR2: Toll-like receptor 2; VLDL: Very low density lipoprotein.

HEPATITIS C VIRUS AND METABOLIC SYNDROME

According to the Joint Scientific Statement in 2009, patients who exhibit three of the five following characteristics are diagnosed with the metabolic syndrome (MetS): (1) Abnormal waist circumference as population and country-specific definitions; (2) Systolic blood pressure ≥ 130 mmHg or diastolic blood pressure ≥ 85 mmHg or currently taking blood pressure-lowering agents; (3) High-density lipoprotein of cholesterol < 40 mg/dL in males or < 50 mg/dL in females; (4) Fasting blood sugar ≥ 100 mg/dL or currently taking diabetes medications; and (5) Triglyceride ≥ 150 mg/dL[115,116]. Both CHC infection and the MetS have common basic pathogenesis which is glucose metabolic derangement and IR resulting in close association and overlapping manifestations[117]. Amongst HCV infected patients, particularly older subjects, the prevalence of MetS ranges from 13.2% to 31.5%[118]. The prevalence increases in patients with CHC, older than 60 years of age, having an odds ratio of eight times of developing MetS than those under 40 years of age. A study by Lonardo *et al*[118] exploring the association between HCV genotypes and MetS prevalence found no significant difference compared to controls[119]. This could be due to the small sample size and patient selection criteria.

More studies show that African Americans infected with HCV are more prone to develop MetS than other ethnic groups[120,121]. An aggressive and severe liver disease is common in CHC patients with MetS. Liver fibrosis is notably more advanced in CHC patients with MetS than those without[122]. The prevalence of liver cirrhosis in CHC-MetS patients was 30% compared to 18.4% in CHC patients without MetS[123,124]. As MetS may worsen the progression of liver diseases in HCV infected patients, further research is needed to assess the impact of viral clearance and sustained virologic response on MetS.

IMPACT OF METABOLIC DISEASE ON CHRONIC HEPATITIS C DISEASE PROGRESSION

It is crucial to understand the impact of underlying metabolic diseases on the natural history of CHC infection as much as to understand the risk of developing metabolic complications from CHC. Given the rising prevalence of obesity and metabolic syndrome observed in the United States and globally, recognition of the impact of obesity and IR in disease progression among patients with CHC is particularly important[125].

In a recent systemic review by Dyal *et al*[124] 20 cohort studies were identified to evaluate the impact of metabolic diseases on disease progression among patients with CHC[125]. The authors evaluated the effect of obesity, diabetes, and steatosis as risk factors for developing advanced fibrosis in patients with chronic HCV infection and demonstrated that the presence of concurrent diabetes among patients with CHC infection was associated with a significantly higher risk of developing advanced fibrosis, with effect measures ranging from odds ratios of 2.25 to 9.24. Hepatic steatosis was also strongly associated with an increased risk of developing advanced fibrosis, with odds ratios of 1.80 to 14.3[126]. However, further studies are needed to assess the association between obesity and advanced fibrosis in CHC patients.

Available evidence aimed to better clarify the impact of concurrent metabolic diseases on disease progression and the natural history of chronic HCV infection; however, several limitations while interpreting the results must be acknowledged. The standard method for exploring the effects of metabolic diseases on disease progression would be to recognize patients with pre-existing metabolic diseases who eventually acquired HCV infection. However, a number of these studies were observational in nature and either utilized a case-control or retrospective cohort study design, which inherently limit the true ability to understand causal links. Significant advancements in HCV therapy were introduced subsequent to these studies which may influence the metabolic milieu and disease progression differently and we need more evidence before we extrapolate the current data to the presently available regimens.

The presence of metabolic diseases may influence the sequela of HCV infection. Patients with diabetes, hepatic steatosis, NASH, and insulin resistance were at more risk of developing CHC compared to patients without underlying metabolic disorders[127,128]. These patients were also found to have a faster progression to liver fibrosis through the same mediators that are inducing inflammation. A study by Paradis *et al*[129] investigated the risk of developing HCC in patients with underlying metabolic syndrome disorders and found there is a profound role of MetS in HCC development and progression. This can be further aggravated by the presence of HCV. The presence of NASH is a major contributor to liver cirrhosis in the presence/absence of HCV[130,131]. These findings elucidate the strong association between MetS disorders, HCV and their complex involvement in liver disease progression. This evidence contributes to a shift in HCC etiology which signifies further research.

MANAGEMENT OF METABOLIC COMPLICATIONS IN CHRONIC HEPATITIS C

Advances in treatment options with highly effective DAAs therapy for CHC aimed for eradication of HCV will not only improve HCV-related liver disease but will most likely impact the incidence and prevalence of HCV-related metabolic diseases, given the strong association between the two conditions. The efficacy of current regimens for CHC has improved the sustained virologic response reaching almost > 95%-100%. It is important to know whether the patient is treatment naïve or experienced, the genotype, the fibrosis level, and underlying comorbidities for personalized medicine and best tailored treatment options.

Concurrent management of coexistent metabolic disorders is also important for optimal control of CHC related liver injury and complications such as HCC as mentioned earlier. However, a detailed discussion of management of these conditions is beyond the scope of this review.

CONCLUSION

Hepatitis C infection has emerged as a systemic infection with impacts beyond the primary site of infection, causing a wide range of clinical manifestations in patients. It is crucial to understand the systemic effects of CHC along with its hepatic complications as it relates to metabolic manifestations and complications. HCV virion exploits the multiple functions of lipid droplets to sustain its multiplication and replication within host cells. The orchestration between HCV major proteins and the liver-muscle-adipose axis, poses a major burden on all the health systems of human body if not adequately addressed. The close and inseparable associations between chronic HCV infection, metabolic disease, and cardiovascular disorders are specifically important considering the increasing prevalence of obesity and metabolic syndrome and their economic burden to patients, the healthcare systems, and society. Cellular and molecular mechanisms governing the interplay of these three organs in health and disease are therefore of significant interest. As indicated by the extent of the metabolic comorbidities discussed, HCV increases the disruption in the liver–muscle–adipose triangle resulting in myriad clinical outcomes in patients. Further studies are needed to assess the association between metabolic derangement and patient quality of life. Physicians are encouraged to pay close attention to the metabolic parameters in HCV patients especially cirrhotics and patients listed for liver transplant.

REFERENCES

1 **Lavanchy D**. The global burden of hepatitis C. *Liver Int* 2009; **29** Suppl 1: 74-81 [PMID: 19207969 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2008.01934.x]

2 **Fabrizi F**, Donato FM, Messa P. Hepatitis C and Its Metabolic Complications in Kidney Disease. *Ann Hepatol* 2017; **16**: 851-861 [PMID: 29055921 DOI: 10.5604/01.3001.0010.5275]

3 **Younossi Z**, Park H, Henry L, Adeyemi A, Stepanova M. Extrahepatic Manifestations of Hepatitis C: A Meta-analysis of Prevalence, Quality of Life, and Economic Burden. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 1599-1608 [PMID: 26924097 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.02.039]

4 **Schiefke I**, Fach A, Wiedmann M, Aretin AV, Schenker E, Borte G, Wiese M, Moessner J. Reduced bone mineral density and altered bone turnover markers in patients with non-cirrhotic chronic hepatitis B or C infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 1843-1847 [PMID: 15793878 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v11.i12.1843]

5 **Chang ML**. Metabolic alterations and hepatitis C: From bench to bedside. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 1461-1476 [PMID: 26819514 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i4.1461]

6 **Zimmet P**. The burden of type 2 diabetes: are we doing enough? *Diabetes Metab* 2003; **29**: 6S9-618 [PMID: 14502096 DOI: 10.1016/s1262-3636(03)72783-9]

7 **Adinolfi LE**, Restivo L, Zampino R, Guerrera B, Lonardo A, Ruggiero L, Riello F, Loria P, Florio A. Chronic HCV infection is a risk of atherosclerosis. Role of HCV and HCV-related steatosis. *Atherosclerosis* 2012; **221**: 496-502 [PMID: 22385985 DOI: 10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2012.01.051]

8 **Mehta SH**, Brancati FL, Strathdee SA, Pankow JS, Netski D, Coresh J, Szklo M, Thomas DL. Hepatitis C virus infection and incident type 2 diabetes. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 50-56 [PMID: 12829986 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2003.50291]

9 **Simó R**, Lecube A, Genescà J, Esteban JI, Hernández C. Sustained virological response correlates with reduction in the incidence of glucose abnormalities in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *Diabetes Care* 2006; **29**: 2462-2466 [PMID: 17065685 DOI: 10.2337/dc06-0456]

10 **Zampino R**, Marrone A, Restivo L, Guerrera B, Sellitto A, Rinaldi L, Romano C, Adinolfi LE. Chronic HCV infection and inflammation: Clinical impact on hepatic and extra-hepatic manifestations. *World J Hepatol* 2013; **5**: 528-540 [PMID: 24179612 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v5.i10.528]

11 **Durante-Mangoni E**, Zampino R, Marrone A, Tripodi MF, Rinaldi L, Restivo L, Cioffi M, Ruggiero G, Adinolfi LE. Hepatic steatosis and insulin resistance are associated with serum imbalance of adiponectin/tumour necrosis factor-alpha in chronic hepatitis C patients. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **24**: 1349-1357 [PMID: 17059516 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.03114.x]

12 **Deltenre P**, Louvet A, Lemoine M, Mourad A, Fartoux L, Moreno C, Henrion J, Mathurin P, Serfaty L. Impact of insulin resistance on sustained response in HCV patients treated with pegylated interferon and ribavirin: a meta-analysis. *J Hepatol* 2011; **55**: 1187-1194 [PMID: 21703195 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2011.03.010]

13 **Bugianesi E**, Salamone F, Negro F. The interaction of metabolic factors with HCV infection: does it matter? *J Hepatol* 2012; **56** Suppl 1: S56-S65 [PMID: 22300466 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(12)60007-5]

14 **Lonardo A**, Loria P, Adinolfi LE, Carulli N, Ruggiero G. Hepatitis C and steatosis: a reappraisal. *J Viral Hepat* 2006; **13**: 73-80 [PMID: 16436124 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2005.00669.x]

15 **Chang ML**, Hsu CM, Tseng JH, Tsou YK, Chen SC, Shiau SS, Yeh CT, Chiu CT. Plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 is independently associated with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease whereas leptin and adiponectin vary between genders. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **30**: 329-336 [PMID:

25091195 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12705]
16 **Marzouk D**, Sass J, Bakr I, El Hosseiny M, Abdel-Hamid M, Rekacewicz C, Chaturvedi N, Mohamed MK, Fontanet A. Metabolic and cardiovascular risk profiles and hepatitis C virus infection in rural Egypt. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 1105-1110 [PMID: 16956918 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2006.091983]
17 **Gomez Cifuentes JD**, Sparkman J, Choi K, Sealock RJ. Regarding: Lui RN, Wong SH, Sánchez-Luna SA, *et al* Overview of guidance for endoscopy during the coronavirus disease 2019 pandemic. J. Gastroenterol. Hepatol. 2020;35(5):749-759. https://doi.org/10.1111/jgh.15053. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **35**: 1654 [PMID: 32503087 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.15129]
18 **Lonardo A**, Adinolfi LE, Restivo L, Ballestri S, Romagnoli D, Baldelli E, Nascimbeni F, Loria P. Pathogenesis and significance of hepatitis C virus steatosis: an update on survival strategy of a successful pathogen. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 7089-7103 [PMID: 24966582 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i23.7089]
19 **Cheng FK**, Torres DM, Harrison SA. Hepatitis C and lipid metabolism, hepatic steatosis, and NAFLD: still important in the era of direct acting antiviral therapy? *J Viral Hepat* 2014; **21**: 1-8 [PMID: 24329852 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12172]
20 **Björnsson E**, Angulo P. Hepatitis C and steatosis. *Arch Med Res* 2007; **38**: 621-627 [PMID: 17613353 DOI: 10.1016/j.arcmed.2006.09.001]
21 **Leandro G**, Mangia A, Hui J, Fabris P, Rubbia-Brandt L, Colloredo G, Adinolfi LE, Asselah T, Jonsson JR, Smedile A, Terrault N, Pazienza V, Giordani MT, Giostra E, Sonzogni A, Ruggiero G, Marcellin P, Powell EE, George J, Negro F; HCV Meta-Analysis (on) Individual Patients' Data Study Group. Relationship between steatosis, inflammation, and fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C: a meta-analysis of individual patient data. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1636-1642 [PMID: 16697727 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2006.03.014]
22 **Hézode C**, Roudot-Thoraval F, Zafrani ES, Dhumeaux D, Pawlotsky JM. Different mechanisms of steatosis in hepatitis C virus genotypes 1 and 3 infections. *J Viral Hepat* 2004; **11**: 455-458 [PMID: 15357652 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2004.00528.x]
23 **Reddy KR**, Govindarajan S, Marcellin P, Bernstein D, Dienstag JL, Bodenheimer H Jr, Rakela J, Messinger D, Schmidt G, Ackrill A, Hadziyannis SJ. Hepatic steatosis in chronic hepatitis C: baseline host and viral characteristics and influence on response to therapy with peginterferon alpha-2a plus ribavirin. *J Viral Hepat* 2008; **15**: 129-136 [PMID: 18184196 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2007.00901.x]
24 **Hanouneh IA**, Feldstein AE, Lopez R, Yerian L, Pillai A, Zein CO, Zein NN. Clinical significance of metabolic syndrome in the setting of chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 584-589 [PMID: 18455698 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2008.02.034]
25 **Mihm S**. Hepatitis C virus, diabetes and steatosis: clinical evidence in favor of a linkage and role of genotypes. *Dig Dis* 2010; **28**: 280-284 [PMID: 20460924 DOI: 10.1159/000282103]
26 **Poynard T**, Ratziu V, McHutchison J, Manns M, Goodman Z, Zeuzem S, Younossi Z, Albrecht J. Effect of treatment with peginterferon or interferon alfa-2b and ribavirin on steatosis in patients infected with hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 75-85 [PMID: 12829989 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2003.50267]
27 **Adinolfi LE**, Gambardella M, Andreana A, Tripodi MF, Utili R, Ruggiero G. Steatosis accelerates the progression of liver damage of chronic hepatitis C patients and correlates with specific HCV genotype and visceral obesity. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 1358-1364 [PMID: 11391523 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2001.24432]
28 **Bugianesi E**, Marchesini G, Gentilcore E, Cua IH, Vanni E, Rizzetto M, George J. Fibrosis in genotype 3 chronic hepatitis C and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: Role of insulin resistance and hepatic steatosis. *Hepatology* 2006; **44**: 1648-1655 [PMID: 17133473 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21429]
29 **Gordon A**, McLean CA, Pedersen JS, Bailey MJ, Roberts SK. Hepatic steatosis in chronic hepatitis B and C: predictors, distribution and effect on fibrosis. *J Hepatol* 2005; **43**: 38-44 [PMID: 15876468 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2005.01.031]
30 **Michitaka K**, Nishiguchi S, Aoyagi Y, Hiasa Y, Tokumoto Y, Onji M; Japan Etiology of Liver Cirrhosis Study Group. Etiology of liver cirrhosis in Japan: a nationwide survey. *J Gastroenterol* 2010; **45**: 86-94 [PMID: 19789837 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-009-0128-5]
31 **Kao CC**, Yi G, Huang HC. The core of hepatitis C virus pathogenesis. *Curr Opin Virol* 2016; **17**: 66-73 [PMID: 26851516 DOI: 10.1016/j.coviro.2016.01.009]
32 **Chang ML**, Hu JH, Yen CH, Chen KH, Kuo CJ, Lin MS, Lee CH, Chen SC, Chien RN. Evolution of ferritin levels in hepatitis C patients treated with antivirals. *Sci Rep* 2020; **10**: 19744 [PMID: 33184464 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-020-76871-z]
33 **Zou DM**, Sun WL. Relationship between Hepatitis C Virus Infection and Iron Overload. *Chin Med J (Engl)* 2017; **130**: 866-871 [PMID: 28345552 DOI: 10.4103/0366-6999.202737]
34 **Fujita N**, Sugimoto R, Takeo M, Urawa N, Mifuji R, Tanaka H, Kobayashi Y, Iwasa M, Watanabe S, Adachi Y, Kaito M. Hepcidin expression in the liver: relatively low level in patients with chronic hepatitis C. *Mol Med* 2007; **13**: 97-104 [PMID: 17515961 DOI: 10.2119/2006-00057.Fujita]
35 **Petta S**, Ciminnisi S, Di Marco V, Cabibi D, Cammà C, Licata A, Marchesini G, Craxì A. Sarcopenia is associated with severe liver fibrosis in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2017; **45**: 510-518 [PMID: 28028821 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13889]
36 **Sinclair M**, Gow PJ, Grossmann M, Angus PW. Review article: sarcopenia in cirrhosis--aetiology, implications and potential therapeutic interventions. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2016; **43**: 765-777

[PMID: 26847265 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13549]
37 **Gowda C**, Compher C, Amorosa VK, Lo Re V 3rd. Association between chronic hepatitis C virus infection and low muscle mass in US adults. *J Viral Hepat* 2014; **21**: 938-943 [PMID: 24989435 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12273]
38 **Fukui A**, Kawabe N, Hashimoto S, Kamei H, Yoshioka K. Skeletal muscle mass depletion in patients with hepatitis C virus infection. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **31**: 59-66 [PMID: 30179904 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000001255]
39 **Dasarathy S**. Cause and management of muscle wasting in chronic liver disease. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2016; **32**: 159-165 [PMID: 26974417 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.0000000000000261]
40 **Gumucio JP**, Qasawa AH, Ferrara PJ, Malik AN, Funai K, McDonagh B, Mendias CL. Reduced mitochondrial lipid oxidation leads to fat accumulation in myosteatosis. *FASEB J* 2019; **33**: 7863-7881 [PMID: 30939247 DOI: 10.1096/fj.201802457RR]
41 **Montano-Loza AJ**, Angulo P, Meza-Junco J, Prado CM, Sawyer MB, Beaumont C, Esfandiari N, Ma M, Baracos VE. Sarcopenic obesity and myosteatosis are associated with higher mortality in patients with cirrhosis. *J Cachexia Sarcopenia Muscle* 2016; **7**: 126-135 [PMID: 27493866 DOI: 10.1002/jcsm.12039]
42 **Bhanji RA**, Narayanan P, Allen AM, Malhi H, Watt KD. Sarcopenia in hiding: The risk and consequence of underestimating muscle dysfunction in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Hepatology* 2017; **66**: 2055-2065 [PMID: 28777879 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29420]
43 **Cruz-Jentoft AJ**, Sayer AA. Sarcopenia. *Lancet* 2019; **393**: 2636-2646 [PMID: 31171417 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(19)31138-9]
44 **Zhai Y**, Xiao Q. The Common Mechanisms of Sarcopenia and NAFLD. *Biomed Res Int* 2017; **2017**: 6297651 [PMID: 29387723 DOI: 10.1155/2017/6297651]
45 **Hsu CS**, Kao JH. Sarcopenia and chronic liver diseases. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **12**: 1229-1244 [PMID: 30791794 DOI: 10.1080/17474124.2018.1534586]
46 **Hiraoka A**, Michitaka K, Ueki H, Kaneto M, Aibiki T, Okudaira T, Kawakami T, Yamago H, Suga Y, Tomida H, Miyamoto Y, Azemoto N, Mori K, Miyata H, Tsubouchi E, Ninomiya T, Hirooka M, Abe M, Matsuura B, Hiasa Y. Sarcopenia and two types of presarcopenia in Japanese patients with chronic liver disease. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **28**: 940-947 [PMID: 27232361 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000000661]
47 **Kalafateli M**, Konstantakis C, Thomopoulos K, Triantos C. Impact of muscle wasting on survival in patients with liver cirrhosis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 7357-7361 [PMID: 26139982 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i24.7357]
48 **Kim JA**, Choi KM. Sarcopenia and fatty liver disease. *Hepatol Int* 2019; **13**: 674-687 [PMID: 31705444 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-019-09996-7]
49 **Chaudhury CS**, Mee T, Chairez C, McLaughlin M, Silk R, Gross C, Kattakuzhy S, Rosenthal E, Kottilil S, Stanley TL, Hadigan C. Testosterone in Men With Chronic Hepatitis C Infection and After Hepatitis C Viral Clearance. *Clin Infect Dis* 2019; **69**: 571-576 [PMID: 30715229 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciy965]
50 **Xu Y**, Guan Y, Jin W, Ding L, Wu J. WITHDRAWN: Higher appendicular skeletal muscle mass percentage is an independent protective factor for non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and significant fibrosis in male with NAFLD. *Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020 [PMID: 32893039 DOI: 10.1016/j.gastrohep.2020.05.020]
51 **Neff GW**, O'Brien CB, Shire NJ, DeManno A, Kahn S, Rideman E, Safdar K, Madariaga J, Rudich SR. Topical testosterone treatment for chronic allograft failure in liver transplant recipients with recurrent hepatitis C virus. *Transplant Proc* 2004; **36**: 3071-3074 [PMID: 15686697 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2004.11.004]
52 **Hiraoka A**, Aibiki T, Okudaira T, Toshimori A, Kawamura T, Nakahara H, Suga Y, Azemoto N, Miyata H, Miyamoto Y, Ninomiya T, Hirooka M, Abe M, Matsuura B, Hiasa Y, Michitaka K. Muscle atrophy as pre-sarcopenia in Japanese patients with chronic liver disease: computed tomography is useful for evaluation. *J Gastroenterol* 2015; **50**: 1206-1213 [PMID: 25820219 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-015-1068-x]
53 **Li AA**, Kim D, Ahmed A. Association of Sarcopenia and NAFLD: An Overview. *Clin Liver Dis (Hoboken)* 2020; **16**: 73-76 [PMID: 32922754 DOI: 10.1002/cld.900]
54 **Srinivas-Shankar U**, Roberts SA, Connolly MJ, O'Connell MD, Adams JE, Oldham JA, Wu FC. Effects of testosterone on muscle strength, physical function, body composition, and quality of life in intermediate-frail and frail elderly men: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2010; **95**: 639-650 [PMID: 20061435 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2009-1251]
55 **Bering T**, Diniz KGD, Coelho MPP, Vieira DA, Soares MMS, Kakehasi AM, Correia MITD, Teixeira R, Queiroz DMM, Rocha GA, Silva LD. Association between pre-sarcopenia, sarcopenia, and bone mineral density in patients with chronic hepatitis C. *J Cachexia Sarcopenia Muscle* 2018; **9**: 255-268 [PMID: 29349902 DOI: 10.1002/jcsm.12269]
56 **Endo K**, Sato T, Suzuki A, Yoshida Y, Kakisaka K, Miyasaka A, Takikawa Y. Sustained virologic response by direct-acting antivirals suppresses skeletal muscle loss in hepatitis C virus infection. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **35**: 1602-1609 [PMID: 31975438 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.14991]
57 **Ichikawa T**, Miyaaki H, Miuma S, Motoyoshi Y, Yamashima M, Yamamichi S, Koike M, Nakano Y, Honda T, Yajima H, Uehara R, Miyazaki O, Kuribayashi Y, Kira K, Taura N, Nakao K. Direct-acting Antivirals Improved the Quality of Life, Ameliorated Disease-related Symptoms, and Augmented Muscle Volume Three Years Later in Patients with Hepatitis C Virus. *Intern Med* 2020;

59: 2653-2660 [PMID: 33132304 DOI: 10.2169/internalmedicine.5102-20]
58 **Lim TR**, Hazlehurst JM, Oprescu AI, Armstrong MJ, Abdullah SF, Davies NP, Flintham R, Balfe P, Mutimer DJ, McKeating JA, Tomlinson JW. Hepatitis C virus infection is associated with hepatic and adipose tissue insulin resistance that improves after viral cure. *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 2019; **90**: 440-448 [PMID: 30586166 DOI: 10.1111/cen.13924]
59 **Scheja L**, Heeren J. Metabolic interplay between white, beige, brown adipocytes and the liver. *J Hepatol* 2016; **64**: 1176-1186 [PMID: 26829204 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2016.01.025]
60 **Jung UJ**, Choi MS. Obesity and its metabolic complications: the role of adipokines and the relationship between obesity, inflammation, insulin resistance, dyslipidemia and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Int J Mol Sci* 2014; **15**: 6184-6223 [PMID: 24733068 DOI: 10.3390/ijms15046184]
61 **Podor TJ**, Loskutoff DJ. Immunoelectron microscopic localization of type 1 plasminogen activator inhibitor in the extracellular matrix of transforming growth factor-beta-activated endothelial cells. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1992; **667**: 46-49 [PMID: 1309070 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.1992.tb51595.x]
62 **Ballantyne GH**, Gumbs A, Modlin IM. Changes in insulin resistance following bariatric surgery and the adipoinsular axis: role of the adipocytokines, leptin, adiponectin and resistin. *Obes Surg* 2005; **15**: 692-699 [PMID: 15946462 DOI: 10.1381/0960892053923789]
63 **Milner KL**, van der Poorten D, Trenell M, Jenkins AB, Xu A, Smythe G, Dore GJ, Zekry A, Weltman M, Fragomeli V, George J, Chisholm DJ. Chronic hepatitis C is associated with peripheral rather than hepatic insulin resistance. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 932-41. e1-3 [PMID: 19962985 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.11.050]
64 **Cua IH**, Hui JM, Bandara P, Kench JG, Farrell GC, McCaughan GW, George J. Insulin resistance and liver injury in hepatitis C is not associated with virus-specific changes in adipocytokines. *Hepatology* 2007; **46**: 66-73 [PMID: 17596870 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21703]
65 **Klöting N**, Berndt J, Kralisch S, Kovacs P, Fasshauer M, Schön MR, Stumvoll M, Blüher M. Vaspin gene expression in human adipose tissue: association with obesity and type 2 diabetes. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2006; **339**: 430-436 [PMID: 16298335 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2005.11.039]
66 **Rabe K**, Lehrke M, Parhofer KG, Broedl UC. Adipokines and insulin resistance. *Mol Med* 2008; **14**: 741-751 [PMID: 19009016 DOI: 10.2119/2008-00058.Rabe]
67 **Wada J**. Vaspin: a novel serpin with insulin-sensitizing effects. *Expert Opin Investig Drugs* 2008; **17**: 327-333 [PMID: 18321232 DOI: 10.1517/13543784.17.3.327]
68 **Kukla M**, Waluga M, Sawczyn T, Berdowska A, Kajor M, Boryczka G, Stygar D, Gabriel A, Zwirska-Korczala K, Hartleb M. Serum vaspin may be a good indicator of fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C and is not altered by antiviral therapy. *Pol J Pathol* 2012; **63**: 213-220 [PMID: 23359189 DOI: 10.5114/pjp.2012.32767]
69 **Kukla M**, Mazur W, Bułdak RJ, Zwirska-Korczala K. Potential role of leptin, adiponectin and three novel adipokines--visfatin, chemerin and vaspin--in chronic hepatitis. *Mol Med* 2011; **17**: 1397-1410 [PMID: 21738955 DOI: 10.2119/molmed.2010.00105]
70 **Dahl TB**, Haukeland JW, Yndestad A, Ranheim T, Gladhaug IP, Damås JK, Haaland T, Løberg EM, Arntsen B, Birkeland K, Bjøro K, Ulven SM, Konopski Z, Nebb HI, Aukrust P, Halvorsen B. Intracellular nicotinamide phosphoribosyltransferase protects against hepatocyte apoptosis and is down-regulated in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2010; **95**: 3039-3047 [PMID: 20392873 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2009-2148]
71 **Cash JL**, Hart R, Russ A, Dixon JP, Colledge WH, Doran J, Hendrick AG, Carlton MB, Greaves DR. Synthetic chemerin-derived peptides suppress inflammation through ChemR23. *J Exp Med* 2008; **205**: 767-775 [PMID: 18391062 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20071601]
72 **Yoshimura T**, Oppenheim JJ. Chemerin reveals its chimeric nature. *J Exp Med* 2008; **205**: 2187-2190 [PMID: 18809717 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20081736]
73 **Wang CC**, Cheng PN, Kao JH. Systematic review: chronic viral hepatitis and metabolic derangement. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2020; **51**: 216-230 [PMID: 31746482 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15575]
74 **Huang H**, Sun F, Owen DM, Li W, Chen Y, Gale M Jr, Ye J. Hepatitis C virus production by human hepatocytes dependent on assembly and secretion of very low-density lipoproteins. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 5848-5853 [PMID: 17376867 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0700760104]
75 **André P**, Komurian-Pradel F, Deforges S, Perret M, Berland JL, Sodoyer M, Pol S, Bréchot C, Paranhos-Baccalà G, Lotteau V. Characterization of low- and very-low-density hepatitis C virus RNA-containing particles. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 6919-6928 [PMID: 12072493 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.76.14.6919-6928.2002]
76 **Li X**, Gao Y, Xu H, Hou J, Gao P. Diabetes mellitus is a significant risk factor for the development of liver cirrhosis in chronic hepatitis C patients. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 9087 [PMID: 28831144 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-09825-7]
77 **Benga WJ**, Krieger SE, Dimitrova M, Zeisel MB, Parnot M, Lupberger J, Hildt E, Luo G, McLauchlan J, Baumert TF, Schuster C. Apolipoprotein E interacts with hepatitis C virus nonstructural protein 5A and determines assembly of infectious particles. *Hepatology* 2010; **51**: 43-53 [PMID: 20014138 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23278]
78 **Cun W**, Jiang J, Luo G. The C-terminal alpha-helix domain of apolipoprotein E is required for interaction with nonstructural protein 5A and assembly of hepatitis C virus. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 11532-11541 [PMID: 20719944 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01021-10]
79 **Sun HY**, Lin CC, Lee JC, Wang SW, Cheng PN, Wu IC, Chang TT, Lai MD, Shieh DB, Young KC. Very low-density lipoprotein/Lipo-viro particles reverse lipoprotein lipase-mediated inhibition of

hepatitis C virus infection *via* apolipoprotein C-III. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 1193-1203 [PMID: 22689516 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2011-301798]

80 **Rojas Á**, del Campo JA, Maraver M, Aparcero R, García-Valdecasas M, Diago M, Carmona I, Andrade RJ, Solà R, Romero-Gómez M. Hepatitis C virus infection alters lipid metabolism depending on IL28B polymorphism and viral genotype and modulates gene expression *in vivo* and in vitro. *J Viral Hepat* 2014; **21**: 19-24 [PMID: 24188401 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12209]

81 **Miyoshi H**, Moriya K, Tsutsumi T, Shinzawa S, Fujie H, Shintani Y, Fujinaga H, Goto K, Todoroki T, Suzuki T, Miyamura T, Matsuura Y, Yotsuyanagi H, Koike K. Pathogenesis of lipid metabolism disorder in hepatitis C: polyunsaturated fatty acids counteract lipid alterations induced by the core protein. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 432-438 [PMID: 21093950 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.07.039]

82 **Leu GZ**, Lin TY, Hsu JT. Anti-HCV activities of selective polyunsaturated fatty acids. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2004; **318**: 275-280 [PMID: 15110784 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2004.04.019]

83 **Sun HY**, Cheng PN, Tseng CY, Tsai WJ, Chiu YC, Young KC. Favouring modulation of circulating lipoproteins and lipid loading capacity by direct antiviral agents grazoprevir/elbasvir or ledipasvir/sofosbuvir treatment against chronic HCV infection. *Gut* 2018; **67**: 1342-1350 [PMID: 28615303 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-313832]

84 **Vespasiani-Gentilucci U**, Gallo P, De Vincentis A, Galati G, Picardi A. Hepatitis C virus and metabolic disorder interactions towards liver damage and atherosclerosis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 2825-2838 [PMID: 24659875 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i11.2825]

85 **Li Y**, Wang X, Yu G, Sun H, Lv J, Chi X, Wu R, Gao X, Niu J. The association of hepatitis c virus infection status with serum glucose levels. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2019; **19**: 86 [PMID: 31195990 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-019-1003-3]

86 **Moucari R**, Asselah T, Cazals-Hatem D, Voitot H, Boyer N, Ripault MP, Sobesky R, Martinot-Peignoux M, Maylin S, Nicolas-Chanoine MH, Paradis V, Vidaud M, Valla D, Bedossa P, Marcellin P. Insulin resistance in chronic hepatitis C: association with genotypes 1 and 4, serum HCV RNA level, and liver fibrosis. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 416-423 [PMID: 18164296 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.11.010]

87 **Lerat H**, Imache MR, Polyte J, Gaudin A, Mercey M, Donati F, Baudesson C, Higgs MR, Picard A, Magnan C, Foufelle F, Pawlotsky JM. Hepatitis C virus induces a prediabetic state by directly impairing hepatic glucose metabolism in mice. *J Biol Chem* 2017; **292**: 12860-12873 [PMID: 28559285 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M117.785030]

88 **Antonelli A**, Ferrari SM, Giuggioli D, Di Domenicantonio A, Ruffilli I, Corrado A, Fabiani S, Marchi S, Ferri C, Ferrannini E, Fallahi P. Hepatitis C virus infection and type 1 and type 2 diabetes mellitus. *World J Diabetes* 2014; **5**: 586-600 [PMID: 25317237 DOI: 10.4239/wjd.v5.i5.586]

89 **Ahmed N**, Rashid A, Naveed AK, Bashir Q. Effect of HCV on fasting glucose, fasting insulin and peripheral insulin resistance in first 5 years of infection. *J Pak Med Assoc* 2016; **66**: 140-142 [PMID: 26819155]

90 **Adinolfi LE**, Jacobson I, Bondin M, Cacoub P. Expert opinion on managing chronic HCV infection in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Antivir Ther* 2018; **23**: 11-21 [PMID: 30451154 DOI: 10.3851/IMP3255]

91 **Mehta SH**, Brancati FL, Sulkowski MS, Strathdee SA, Szklo M, Thomas DL. Prevalence of type 2 diabetes mellitus among persons with hepatitis C virus infection in the United States. *Ann Intern Med* 2000; **133**: 592-599 [PMID: 11033586 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-133-8-200010170-00009]

92 **Allison ME**, Wreghitt T, Palmer CR, Alexander GJ. Evidence for a link between hepatitis C virus infection and diabetes mellitus in a cirrhotic population. *J Hepatol* 1994; **21**: 1135-1139 [PMID: 7699240 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(05)80631-2]

93 **Fabiani S**, Fallahi P, Ferrari SM, Miccoli M, Antonelli A. Hepatitis C virus infection and development of type 2 diabetes mellitus: Systematic review and meta-analysis of the literature. *Rev Endocr Metab Disord* 2018; **19**: 405-420 [PMID: 29322398 DOI: 10.1007/s11154-017-9440-1]

94 **White DL**, Ratziu V, El-Serag HB. Hepatitis C infection and risk of diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Hepatol* 2008; **49**: 831-844 [PMID: 18814931 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2008.08.006]

95 **Hsu CS**, Kao JH. Hepatitis C infection and metabolic syndrome. *J Formos Med Assoc* 2010; **109**: 403-407 [PMID: 20629266 DOI: 10.1016/s0929-6646(10)60071-x]

96 **Mason AL**, Lau JY, Hoang N, Qian K, Alexander GJ, Xu L, Guo L, Jacob S, Regenstein FG, Zimmerman R, Everhart JE, Wasserfall C, Maclaren NK, Perrillo RP. Association of diabetes mellitus and chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *Hepatology* 1999; **29**: 328-333 [PMID: 9918906 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510290235]

97 **Desbois AC**, Cacoub P. Diabetes mellitus, insulin resistance and hepatitis C virus infection: A contemporary review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2017; **23**: 1697-1711 [PMID: 28321170 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v23.i9.1697]

98 **Giordanino C**, Bugianesi E, Smedile A, Ciancio A, Abate ML, Olivero A, Pellicano R, Cassader M, Gambino R, Bo S, Ciccone G, Rizzetto M, Saracco G. Incidence of type 2 diabetes mellitus and glucose abnormalities in patients with chronic hepatitis C infection by response to treatment: results of a cohort study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2008; **103**: 2481-2487 [PMID: 18702647 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2008.02002.x]

99 **Chen J**, Han Y, Xu C, Xiao T, Wang B. Effect of type 2 diabetes mellitus on the risk for hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic liver diseases: a meta-analysis of cohort studies. *Eur J Cancer Prev* 2015; **24**: 89-99 [PMID: 24809655 DOI: 10.1097/CEJ.0000000000000038]

100 **Shintani Y**, Fujie H, Miyoshi H, Tsutsumi T, Tsukamoto K, Kimura S, Moriya K, Koike K. Hepatitis C virus infection and diabetes: direct involvement of the virus in the development of insulin resistance. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 840-848 [PMID: 14988838 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2003.11.056]

101 **Fabrizio C**, Procopio A, Scudeller L, Dell'Acqua R, Bruno G, Milano E, Milella M, Saracino A, Angarano G. HCV and diabetes: towards a 'sustained' glycaemic improvement after treatment with DAAs? *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2017; **23**: 342-343 [PMID: 27693659 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmi.2016.09.021]

102 **Kukla M**, Piotrowski D, Waluga M, Hartleb M. Insulin resistance and its consequences in chronic hepatitis C. *Clin Exp Hepatol* 2015; **1**: 17-29 [PMID: 28856251 DOI: 10.5114/ceh.2015.51375]

103 **Duvnjak M**, Stojsavljević S, Jukić LV, Duvnjak LS. Risk Factors for Colorectal Adenoma - Acknowledging the Burden of NAFLD. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2019; **7**: 97-98 [PMID: 31293907 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2019.00022]

104 **Sesti G**. Pathophysiology of insulin resistance. *Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2006; **20**: 665-679 [PMID: 17161338 DOI: 10.1016/j.beem.2006.09.007]

105 **van der Meer AJ**, Veldt BJ, Feld JJ, Wedemeyer H, Dufour JF, Lammert F, Duarte-Rojo A, Heathcote EJ, Manns MP, Kuske L, Zeuzem S, Hofmann WP, de Knegt RJ, Hansen BE, Janssen HL. Association between sustained virological response and all-cause mortality among patients with chronic hepatitis C and advanced hepatic fibrosis. *JAMA* 2012; **308**: 2584-2593 [PMID: 23268517 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2012.144878]

106 **Mangia A**, Ripoli M. Insulin resistance, steatosis and hepatitis C virus. *Hepatol Int* 2013; **7** Suppl 2: 782-789 [PMID: 24587848 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-013-9460-1]

107 **Vanni E**, Abate ML, Gentilcore E, Hickman I, Gambino R, Cassader M, Smedile A, Ferrannini E, Rizzetto M, Marchesini G, Gastaldelli A, Bugianesi E. Sites and mechanisms of insulin resistance in nonobese, nondiabetic patients with chronic hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 697-706 [PMID: 19582803 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23031]

108 **Aytug S**, Reich D, Sapiro LE, Bernstein D, Begum N. Impaired IRS-1/PI3-kinase signaling in patients with HCV: a mechanism for increased prevalence of type 2 diabetes. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 1384-1392 [PMID: 14647049 DOI: 10.1016/j.hep.2003.09.012]

109 **Kawaguchi Y**, Mizuta T. Interaction between hepatitis C virus and metabolic factors. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 2888-2901 [PMID: 24659880 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i11.2888]

110 **Banerjee A**, Meyer K, Mazumdar B, Ray RB, Ray R. Hepatitis C virus differentially modulates activation of forkhead transcription factors and insulin-induced metabolic gene expression. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 5936-5946 [PMID: 20357092 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02344-09]

111 **Miyamoto H**, Moriishi K, Moriya K, Murata S, Tanaka K, Suzuki T, Miyamura T, Koike K, Matsuura Y. Involvement of the PA28gamma-dependent pathway in insulin resistance induced by hepatitis C virus core protein. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 1727-1735 [PMID: 17135326 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01683-06]

112 **Pazienza V**, Clément S, Pugnale P, Conzelman S, Foti M, Mangia A, Negro F. The hepatitis C virus core protein of genotypes 3a and 1b downregulates insulin receptor substrate 1 through genotype-specific mechanisms. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 1164-1171 [PMID: 17465001 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21634]

113 **Pascarella S**, Clément S, Guilloux K, Conzelmann S, Penin F, Negro F. Effects of hepatitis C virus on suppressor of cytokine signaling mRNA levels: comparison between different genotypes and core protein sequence analysis. *J Med Virol* 2011; **83**: 1005-1015 [PMID: 21503913 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.22072]

114 **Alberti KG**, Eckel RH, Grundy SM, Zimmet PZ, Cleeman JI, Donato KA, Fruchart JC, James WP, Loria CM, Smith SC Jr; International Diabetes Federation Task Force on Epidemiology and Prevention; National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; American Heart Association; World Heart Federation; International Atherosclerosis Society; International Association for the Study of Obesity. Harmonizing the metabolic syndrome: a joint interim statement of the International Diabetes Federation Task Force on Epidemiology and Prevention; National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; American Heart Association; World Heart Federation; International Atherosclerosis Society; and International Association for the Study of Obesity. *Circulation* 2009; **120**: 1640-1645 [PMID: 19805654 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.109.192644]

115 **Kuo YH**, Kee KM, Wang JH, Hsu NT, Hsiao CC, Chen Y, Lu SN. Association between chronic viral hepatitis and metabolic syndrome in southern Taiwan: a large population-based study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2018; **48**: 993-1002 [PMID: 30277595 DOI: 10.1111/apt.14960]

116 **Choi JS**, Han KJ, Lee S, Chun SW, Kim DJ, Kim HC, Kim HM. Serum HBV surface antigen positivity is associated with low prevalence of metabolic syndrome in Korean adult men. *J Epidemiol* 2015; **25**: 74-79 [PMID: 25283312 DOI: 10.2188/jea.JE20140053]

117 **Katoonizadeh A**, Ghoroghi S, Sharafkhah M, Khoshnia M, Mirzaei S, Shayanrad A, Poustchi H, Malekzadeh R. Chronic hepatitis B infection is not associated with increased risk of vascular mortality while having an association with metabolic syndrome. *J Med Virol* 2016; **88**: 1230-1237 [PMID: 26742819 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.24466]

118 **Lonardo A**, Ballestri S, Adinolfi LE, Violi E, Carulli L, Lombardini S, Scaglioni F, Ricchi M, Ruggiero G, Loria P. Hepatitis C virus-infected patients are 'spared' from the metabolic syndrome but not from insulin resistance. A comparative study of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and hepatitis C virus-related steatosis. *Can J Gastroenterol* 2009; **23**: 273-278 [PMID: 19373421 DOI: 10.1155/2009/369703]

119 **Tsochatzis E**, Papatheodoridis GV, Manesis EK, Kafiri G, Tiniakos DG, Archimandritis AJ. Metabolic syndrome is associated with severe fibrosis in chronic viral hepatitis and non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **27**: 80-89 [PMID: 17919273 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2007.03538.x]

120 **Setiawan VW**, Stram DO, Porcel J, Lu SC, Le Marchand L, Noureddin M. Prevalence of chronic liver disease and cirrhosis by underlying cause in understudied ethnic groups: The multiethnic cohort. *Hepatology* 2016; **64**: 1969-1977 [PMID: 27301913 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28677]

121 **Aguilar M**, Bhuket T, Torres S, Liu B, Wong RJ. Prevalence of the metabolic syndrome in the United States, 2003-2012. *JAMA* 2015; **313**: 1973-1974 [PMID: 25988468 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2015.4260]

122 **Ogden CL**, Carroll MD, Kit BK, Flegal KM. Prevalence of childhood and adult obesity in the United States, 2011-2012. *JAMA* 2014; **311**: 806-814 [PMID: 24570244 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2014.732]

123 **Dyal HK**, Aguilar M, Bhuket T, Liu B, Holt EW, Torres S, Cheung R, Wong RJ. Concurrent Obesity, Diabetes, and Steatosis Increase Risk of Advanced Fibrosis Among HCV Patients: A Systematic Review. *Dig Dis Sci* 2015; **60**: 2813-2824 [PMID: 26138651 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-015-3760-3]

124 **Dyal HK**, Aguilar M, Bartos G, Holt EW, Bhuket T, Liu B, Cheung R, Wong RJ. Diabetes Mellitus Increases Risk of Hepatocellular Carcinoma in Chronic Hepatitis C Virus Patients: A Systematic Review. *Dig Dis Sci* 2016; **61**: 636-645 [PMID: 26703125 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-015-3983-3]

125 **Ahmed A**, Wong RJ, Harrison SA. Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease Review: Diagnosis, Treatment, and Outcomes. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **13**: 2062-2070 [PMID: 26226097 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2015.07.029]

126 **Wong RJ**, Kanwal F, Younossi ZM, Ahmed A. Hepatitis C virus infection and coronary artery disease risk: a systematic review of the literature. *Dig Dis Sci* 2014; **59**: 1586-1593 [PMID: 24894512 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-014-3222-3]

127 **Patel A**, Harrison SA. Hepatitis C virus infection and nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Gastroenterol Hepatol (N Y)* 2012; **8**: 305-312 [PMID: 22933860]

128 **Michelotti GA**, Machado MV, Diehl AM. NAFLD, NASH and liver cancer. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **10**: 656-665 [PMID: 24080776 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2013.183]

129 **Paradis V**, Zalinski S, Chelbi E, Guedj N, Degos F, Vilgrain V, Bedossa P, Belghiti J. Hepatocellular carcinomas in patients with metabolic syndrome often develop without significant liver fibrosis: a pathological analysis. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 851-859 [PMID: 19115377 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22734]

130 **Dyson JK**, Anstee QM, McPherson S. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: a practical approach to diagnosis and staging. *Frontline Gastroenterol* 2014; **5**: 211-218 [PMID: 25018867 DOI: 10.1136/flgastro-2013-100403]

131 **Negro F**. Natural history of NASH and HCC. *Liver Int* 2020; **40** Suppl 1: 72-76 [PMID: 32077608 DOI: 10.1111/Liv.14362]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2021 April 7; 27(13): 1283-1295

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1283

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Artificial intelligence for early detection of pancreatic adenocarcinoma: The future is promising

Antonio Mendoza Ladd, David L Diehl

ORCID number: Antonio Mendoza Ladd 0000-0002-8013-3545; David L Diehl 0000-0003-4128-3839.

Author contributions: Both Mendoza Ladd A and Diehl D participated equally in the literature search and the drafting, editing and approval of the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflict of interest exist for this manuscript.

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: United

Antonio Mendoza Ladd, Department of Internal Medicine, Division of Gastroenterology, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center El Paso, El Paso, TX 79905, United States

David L Diehl, Department of Gastroenterology and Nutrition, Geisinger Medical Center, Danville, PA 17822, United States

Corresponding author: Antonio Mendoza Ladd, FACG, FASGE, Assistant Professor, Department of Internal Medicine, Division of Gastroenterology, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center El Paso, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, United States. dr_ladd25@yahoo.com

Abstract

Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) is a worldwide public health concern. Despite extensive research efforts toward improving diagnosis and treatment, the 5-year survival rate at best is approximately 15%. This dismal figure can be attributed to a variety of factors including lack of adequate screening methods, late symptom onset, and treatment resistance. Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma remains a grim diagnosis with a high mortality rate and a significant psychological burden for patients and their families. In recent years artificial intelligence (AI) has permeated the medical field at an accelerated pace, bringing potential new tools that carry the promise of improving diagnosis and treatment of a variety of diseases. In this review we will summarize the landscape of AI in diagnosis and treatment of PDAC.

Key Words: Pancreatic adenocarcinoma; Artificial intelligence; Neural network; Future perspectives; Early diagnosis; Improved performance

Core Tip: Pancreatic adenocarcinoma is one of the deadliest malignancies in the world. Several factors are responsible for this but delayed diagnosis is one of the most important. Despite improvements in diagnostic methods, early lesions are still missed in clinical practice. Artificial intelligence (AI)-assisted diagnostic methods have the potential of improving the clinical outcomes of these patients. However, major improvements in AI technology and its implementation need to occur before potential

States

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: December 31, 2020
Peer-review started: December 31, 2020
First decision: January 17, 2021
Revised: January 22, 2021
Accepted: March 13, 2021
Article in press: March 13, 2021
Published online: April 7, 2021

P-Reviewer: Caputo D, Gkolfakis P, Kosuga T
S-Editor: Zhang L
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Ma YJ

benefits can be attained.

Citation: Mendoza Ladd A, Diehl DL. Artificial intelligence for early detection of pancreatic adenocarcinoma: The future is promising. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(13): 1283-1295
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i13/1283.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1283

INTRODUCTION

Current modalities for the diagnosis and treatment of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) remain disappointing. With an overall survival rate of 3%-15%, it is one of the deadliest malignancies in the world[1]. Although currently it is the 7th leading cause of cancer death worldwide, recent trends suggest that in North America and Europe PDAC will soon become 2nd and 3rd respectively[2,3]. Several factors contribute to the poor survival statistics of PDAC: Lack of adequate screening tests, delayed diagnosis, and sub-optimal treatment options. Consequently, improvements in all these areas are desperately needed.

Recent technological advances have led to the increased application of artificial intelligence (AI) in different disciplines. Because computers can store and analyze larger amounts of data than the human brain, AI has the potential to achieve unmet needs in medicine. Since improving outcomes for PDAC is an area of urgent need, this review will provide a summary of current and future applications of AI in the diagnosis and management of PDAC.

AI, MACHINE LEARNING, AND ARTIFICAL NEURAL NETWORKS

AI is a branch of computer science dedicated to developing models aimed at performing functions comparable to those accomplished by the human brain. Machine learning (ML) is the area of AI that deals with developing computer models capable of learning specific tasks through the repetition of calculations derived from large amounts of data[4]. These computer models analyze data through repetitive calculations using mathematical self-derived algorithms that are constantly adjusted until the model produces the desired outcome. Once the combination of adjustments necessary to achieve the outcome has been discovered, the computer then "learns" how to perform that specific task[5].

Broadly speaking, ML can be either supervised or unsupervised. The difference lies in whether the desired outcome of interest is previously known by the computer. In supervised learning, a computer is first introduced to a training dataset (the "input") as well as the desired outcome of interest (the "output"). The computer then analyzes the input making the necessary adjustments to the algorithm until it consistently produces the desired output[6]. This type of learning requires large amounts of training data that has been pre-labeled ("curated") by a human operator. Once the training of the machine is completed, a different dataset is used to test its performance (testing data). In unsupervised learning, the computer is introduced to unlabeled data. The machine then sorts it using the algorithm to identify features within it that can be grouped and analyzed further to reach a specific outcome[7]. Because the data in unsupervised ML is not curated, larger amounts of training data are required than for supervised ML.

To date, most of the ML used in medicine has been supervised; and it has been made possible due to the emergence of a relatively new discipline called radiomics. Radiomics studies the conversion of digital medical images into data that can be then subjected to statistical analysis[8]. Using computer technology, predefined quantitative features are extracted from computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance Imaging (MRI) or other imaging modalities. An essential step prior to this data extraction however, is lesion "segmentation". Segmentation is in simple terms, delineation of the lesion within an image. In supervised ML a human operator delineates the lesion prior to the algorithm operating on the data. In unsupervised ML, the algorithm learns how to segment the lesion of interest by itself.

Once the quantitative information of the lesion in the image is extracted, it is

analyzed utilizing artificial neural networks (ANN). An ANN is a group of interconnected computers with a structure similar to a neural network in the human brain. Each computer represents a neuron or "node", and each connection a synapse or "weight" (Figure 1). ANNs are organized in "layers" (groups of nodes) and the most basic model contains three: (1) Input layer (which receives the data), (2) Hidden layer (which performs the calculations and analyses), and (3) Output layer (which produces the final output)[9]. Deep neural networks contain more than one hidden layer and therefore can learn to analyze data with higher complexity levels; this is termed "deep learning"[10]. The different layers work in a hierarchical structure to produce the desired output.

AI-ASSISTED ANALYSIS OF ENDOSCOPIC ULTRASOUND IMAGES

Endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) is currently one of the most useful imaging modalities in the diagnosis of PDAC. The overall sensitivity of EUS guided biopsies for the diagnosis of PDAC reaches 98%, but its specificity can be as low as 20%[11]. The accuracy of EUS depends on both operator and lesion-related factors. The most important operator-related factor is the amount of experience performing EUS. On occasions, variations in gastroduodenal anatomy, (*i.e.* after partial gastric resection, or presence of a duodenal stricture) can significantly limit the ability of operator to visualize the pancreas. On the other hand, lesion-related factors include patient's body habitus, the presence of acute inflammation (when EUS is done immediately after an episode of acute pancreatitis) or the presence of chronic pancreatitis (CP), particularly in the presence of parenchymal calcifications. Sensitivity of EUS for PDAC in the presence of CP can be as low as 54%[12,13]. In addition, CP and autoimmune pancreatitis can occasionally form pseudotumors, which may complicate image analysis by the endosonographer.

Several studies have reported on the application of AI in the analysis of EUS images of pancreatic diseases[14-22] (Table 1). For the most part, these studies have focused on evaluating the accuracy of ANNs in differentiating CP from PDAC. Norton *et al*[14] analyzed still EUS images previously selected by experts who did not perform the procedure and were blinded to the final diagnosis using an ANN. A total of 21 patients with PDAC and 14 with CP were included. Four features were analyzed in each image by the ANN, achieving an overall accuracy of 89%.

In a similar study, Das *et al*[17] retrospectively analyzed the performance of an ANN in differentiating PDAC from normal pancreas and CP. A total of 56 patients (22 normal, 12 CP and 22 PDAC) were studied. Their AI algorithm identified PDAC with an area under the curve of 0.93. The differences in accuracy in this study may have been secondary to the more stringent criteria in the definition of CP and the higher number of image features analyzed by the ANN. A larger study performed by Zhu *et al*[18], analyzed 262 patients with PDAC and 126 with CP and reported that their algorithm reached an overall accuracy of 94%.

Elastography is an imaging method developed to establish the differences in consistency ("strain") between normal and abnormal tissue during EUS. Such differences are portrayed in a color-coded overlay on the EUS image, with red correlated with softer tissue and blue with harder[19]. A multicenter study reported an overall accuracy, sensitivity and specificity of 84%, 88% and 83% respectively in differentiating PDAC from CP[20]. This study used ANN analysis of histograms from elastography images previously selected by experts blinded to the patients' diagnoses. Another similar small study of 68 patients reported an accuracy rate of 90%[21].

Contrast agents have also been developed to aid in the differentiation between PDAC and CP. Săftoiu *et al*[22] reported that ANN analysis of contrast-enhanced EUS images could establish a difference with an area under the curve of 94%. Few studies have focused on using standard EUS B mode images to diagnose pancreatic tumors in the absence of CP. These have reported accuracies up to 99%[15,16].

AI-ASSISTED ANALYSIS OF COMPUTERIZED TOMOGRAPHY IMAGES

Computerized tomography (CT) is perhaps the most common medical imaging modality being explored with AI. The analysis of CT images of neoplastic lesions involves three main steps: detection, characterization and monitoring of change over time[23]. Most of the available studies have focused on AI-assisted characterization of lesions, which is equivalent to the previously defined concept of segmentation. Three

Table 1 Studies exploring artificial intelligence in the diagnosis of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma

Ref.	Study design	Data source	AI instrument	Patient	Aim	Accuracy
Norton *et al*[14], 2001	Retrospective	Standard EUS	ANN	21	PDAC *vs* CP	89%
Ozkan *et al*[15], 2015	Retrospective	Standard EUS	ANN	332	PDAC *vs* Nl	89%-92%
Zhang *et al*[16], 2010	Retrospective	Standard EUS	ANN	216	PDAC *vs* Nl	98%
Das *et al*[17], 2008	Retrospective	Standard EUS	ANN	56	PDAC *vs* Nl *vs* CP	93%
Zhu *et al*[18], 2013	Retrospcective	Standard EUS	ANN	388	PDAC *vs* CP	94%
Săftoiu *et al*[20], 2012	Prospective	EUS w/ elastography	ANN	258	PDAC *vs* CP	91%
Săftoiu *et al*[21], 2008	Prospective	EUS w/elastography	ANN	68	PDAC *vs* CP	90%
Săftoiu *et al*[22], 2015	Prospective	EUS w/contrast	ANN	167	PDAC *vs* CP	95%[1]
Fu *et al*[24], 2018	Retrospective	CT	ANN	59	Pancreatic tumor segmentation	76%[1]
Chu *et al*[25], 2019	Retrospective	CT	Computer derived forest algorithm	380	PDAC *vs* Nl	99%
Liu *et al*[26], 2019	Retrospective	CT	ANN	338	PDAC *vs* Nl	76%
Chu *et al*[29], 2019	Retrospective	CT	ANN	456	Segmentation of PDAC *vs* Nl	94%
Devi *et al*[32], 2019	Retrospective	MRI	ANN	168	Nl *vs* Abnormal pancreas	96%
Gao *et al*[33], 2020	Retrospective	MRI	ANN	504	Identify pancreatic disease	77%
Liang *et al*[34], 2020	Retrospective	MRI	ANN	27	Segmentation of panc tumors	Not explicitly stated
Muhammad *et al*[42], 2019	Retrospective	Clinical variables	ANN	800114	PDAC prediction	85%
Klein *et al*[43], 2013	Retrospective	Clinical variables	Computer derived model	7003	PDAC risk	61%
Hsieh *et al*[45], 2018	Retrospective	Clinical variables	ANN	> 1 million	NOD predicting PDAC	72%
Zhao *et al*[46], 2011	Retrospective	Clinival variables + Pubmed data	Bayesian network inference	N/A	PDAC prediction	85%
Sanoob *et al*[47], 2016	Retrospective	Clinical variables	ANN	120	PDAC detection	Not explicitly stated
Momeni-Boroujeni *et al*[56], 2017	Retrospective	FNA samples	ANN	75	PDAC diagnosis	77%
Bhasin *et al*[58], 2016	Retrospective	PDAC genes	Computer vector model	5[2]	PDAC detection	92%
Almeida *et al*[59], 2020	Retrospective	PDAC genes	ANN	40[2]	PDAC detection	86%

[1]Sensitivity.

[2]Genes. AI: Artificial intelligence; ANN: Artificial Neural Network; CT: Computerized tomography; EUS: Endoscopic ultrasound; MRI: Magnetic resonance imaging; FNA: Fine needle aspiration; PDAC: Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma; CP: Chronic pancreatitis; NOD: New onset diabetes.

studies have applied AI to the analysis of CT images in PDAC for diagnostic purposes[24-26]. In a small study of 15 healthy patients and 44 with a variety of pancreatic tumors, Fu *et al*[24] reported that their algorithm achieved an overall sensitivity of 76%. In a retrospective case control study of 380 patients (190 cases and 190 controls) Chu *et al*[25] reported an accuracy of 99% in their computer-derived algorithm. Meanwhile, a prospective study by Liu *et al*[26] reported an accuracy of 76%. AI has also been utilized to establish correlations between the CT images of PDAC and their subsequent biological behaviors[27,28].

Two important ongoing projects are worth mentioning. The Felix Project funded by the Lustgarten Foundation is a multidisciplinary study carried out by a group at Johns Hopkins University. Using deep learning computer models with manually segmented images from 156 PDAC cases and 300 normal controls, the group reported a sensitivity

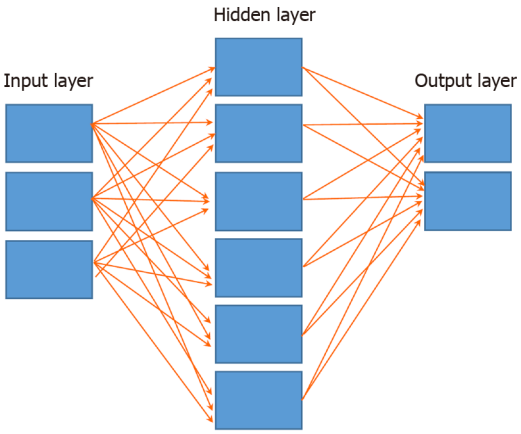


Figure 1 Basic anatomy of an artificial neural network. Input layer, hidden layer (may have more than one) and output layer. All nodes are interconnected through wieghts (arrows).

and specificity of 94% and 99% respectively in their initial report[29]. Based on these encouraging results, the group's next step is to expand their analysis to 575 normal and 750 PDAC patients. The group's ultimate goal is to fine tune the performance of their algorithm prior to expanding it to larger externally derived datasets.

The second ongoing study is being conducted by the Alliance of Pancreatic Cancer Consortium Imaging Working Group (2). Their objective is to collect pre- and post-diagnosis CT, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and transabdominal ultrasound images from patients ultimately diagnosed with PDAC. These images will be used to create a repository that will later be shared and analyzed. The ultimate goal of the project is to develop AI models that can predict the appearance of PDAC and diagnose the disease in its early stages.

AI-ASSISTED ANALYSIS OF MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGES

Segmentation of MRI images by AI has been reported to be more technically challenging than CT images[30,31]. A few studies have reported that ML models can be trained to accurately identify pathology in the pancreas, although the literature on PDAC is scarce. Devi *et al*[32] reported that an ANN could accurately identify a variety of abnormal pancreatic findings with a 96% accuracy. Similarly, Gao *et al*[33] reported that an AI model differentiated normal from abnormal pancreas at a level comparable to humans (77% *vs* 82% respectively). In the only published study aimed specifically at identifying PDAC in MR images, Liang *et al*[34] reported that a convoluted neural network (a variety of ANN) performed similarly to humans in identifying the lesion.

Artificial Intelligence processing of MRI images has been also applied in the context of PDAC therapy. Spieler *et al*[35] reported that an ANN accurately delineated pancreatic tumors prior to radiotherapy. Zhao *et al*[36] reported similarly positive results. In a study utilizing AI aiming to automatically calculate the dose of stereotactic body radiation therapy, Campbell *et al*[37] demonstrated that an ANN-calculated dose was comparable to a human-calculated one. By applying radiomics to MRI images, investigators have reported that their quantitative data can be correlated with aspects such as tumor subtype, survival and response to chemotherapy[38,39]. This same technology has made possible other studies showing that MR images data can be used to predict relapse after PDAC treatment[40,41].

AI ANALYSIS OF CLINICAL DATABASES

The evolution of AI has resulted in models with the capacity of analyzing data beyond quantitative image features. This type of ML requires a higher complexity in the architecture of the neural networks given the broad range of variables analyzed at any given point in time. These models have been applied in the development of algorithms that can accurately identify patients with or at risk of developing PDAC based on several clinical variables.

Muhammad *et al*[42] utilized an ANN to analyze a large patient population derived from the National Health Interview Survey and the Prostate, Lung, Colorectal and Ovarian trial. The authors developed and trained the ANN with > 800000 patients of which 898 had PDAC. Analyzing variables such as demographics, comorbidities, race and family history, the model predicted the development of PDAC with an AUC of 0.85. In a similar manner, albeit with a lower accuracy, Klein *et al*[43] utilized data from the PanScan Consortium to develop a model that predicted high risk of PDAC among patients of European ancestry with an AUC of 0.61.

New onset diabetes has been adopted as a marker for patients with high risk of developing PDAC within the following 3 years[44]. As such, it has been the subject of analysis by AI techniques. Hsieh *et al*[45] compared the PDAC prediction accuracy of new onset diabetes when analyzed by a regular logistic regression or an ANN. A total of 3092 PDAC cases were identified from a population of > 1000000 patients. Interestingly, the logistic regression slightly outperformed the ANN (AUROC 0.7 and 0.64% respectively). In a complex study combining PubMed data and clinical information, Zhao *et al*[46] utilized an innovative weighted Bayesian network that accurately predicted PDAC with an AUROC of 0.91. In a similar but simpler study, Sanoob *et al*[47] reported that an ANN can accurately diagnose PDAC based on a combination of signs and symptoms[47]. ANNs that analyze clinical data have also been used in determining patient survival and performance after PDAC treatment[48,49].

AI-ASSISTED ANALYSIS OF PATHOLOGICAL AND MOLECULAR FEATURES OF PDAC

Currently, pathologists are responsible for interpretation of histology specimens, and this process is dependent on their previous training, level of experience and individual skills. In an attempt to standardize interpretation and reduce human bias, AI techniques have been applied to pathology specimen analysis[50].

Application of AI in pathology is dependent on creation of a high-resolution digital image from the glass slide. This step is called "whole slide imaging" (WSI). WSI is accomplished by use of glass slide scanners and the technology to support them[51]. WSI and the necessary IT infrastructure to support its clinical use is referred to as "digital pathology". It is expected that eventually, pathology workflow will move away from pathologists looking at glass slides through a microscope to pathologists reviewing digital images of slides on high resolution computer screens. Food and Drug Administration clearance for these devices is relatively new (2017), and widespread adoption of digital pathology technology is still in its early phases. There is an increasing amount of data on validation of WSI compared to microscope viewing of glass slides, for example a recent study showed good concordance of slide interpretation of frozen sections done with glass slides/microscope compared to WSI/digital pathology workstation[52] Similar excellent intraobserver concordance between glass slides and digital pathology has been shown for routine clinical workload in surgical pathology[53].

There is already significant work and available commercial devices that can bring AI computing power to aid in the interpretation and screening of biopsies, although commercial expansion of this is in its infancy[54]. Much of the work regarding AI in pathology concerns prostate and breast malignancy, since the incidence of these malignancies is fairly high, and the clinical need and potential commercial applications present a more attractive corporate opportunity for device sales. However, with continued digitization of glass slides, particularly of pancreatic malignancy (both FNA specimens and surgical pathology) it is hoped that an enlarging curated group of cases can serve as a training set for AI analysis regarding pancreatic cancer.

There has been only a limited number of investigations of AI in pathology for the diagnosis of pancreatic cancer. Although the sensitivity and specificity of EUS guided FNA samples is in average > 90%[55], some specimens still fall under the "atypical cells" category, posing a considerable diagnostic dilemma. In a recent study, Momeni-Boroujeni *et al*[56] studied the performance of an ANN in reclassifying EUS-FNA specimens originally labeled as "atypical" by pathologists. Among a group of 31 patients in whom the final diagnosis had been previously established by other diagnostic methods, the ANN's overall accuracy for adequately reclassifying the specimen as malignant or benign was 77%.

Two of the main factors driving the high mortality of PDAC are suboptimal understanding of its malignant behavior and its unpredictable treatment response rate.

Advances in AI-assisted genetic and molecular profiling of PDAC have recently broadened insight on these factors[57]. Recent data showed that early diagnosis could be possible through AI analysis of the transcription products of certain PDAC genes. These studies have reported sensitivity and specificity ranging from 88%-95% and 83%-95% respectively[58,59]. AI has also been utilized to match PDAC biological information with chemical properties of specific drugs in order to develop models capable of predicting response to these specific agents[60,61].

FUTURE CONSIDERATIONS

Technological advances in the last 50 years have exponentially increased the amount and quality of data available for medical decision making. Hence, it is becoming increasingly evident that new methods for storage and analysis of it are necessary. Although the concept of AI or its applications in medicine may still seem foreign for most practitioners, it is rapidly positioning itself as an indispensable tool to reduce human error. As sophisticated and elegant our diagnostic and therapeutic capacities may be currently, they remain inevitably limited by our subconscious and conscious bias, as well as our wide range of intellectual and technical skills. William Osler's famous quote: "medicine is a science of uncertainty and an art of probability" will likely never be proven false.However the degree of uncertainty and probability considered tolerable in modern medicine is constantly shrinking. The advent of AI brings, in theory, the promise of reducing and even eliminating these shortcomings

Nevertheless, this promise is one that needs to be taken cautiously. There are several hurdles that must be overcome before AI can see widespread adoption in medical care. One limitation is the current lack of adequate standardization. Uniform protocols for data collection, processing, storage, reproduction and analysis must be established and standardized. Furthermore, different types of data may require different AI technologies. For example, ANNs trained to adequately classify histologic slides of pancreatic biopsies which have been fixed and stained with a specific method, may underperform, or not perform at all, when presented with slides prepared in a different manner. Creating such universal protocols, although possible, will be laborious and expensive.

Another concern is with the ethical handling of information. AI systems require vast amounts of data, and therefore, its implementation demands reliable methods of patient data de-identification. This is indispensable to ensure patient confidentiality, since one of the pillars of AI is data sharing. On the other hand, de-identified data needs to maintain its traceability, in order to allow individual practitioners to retrieve it and make the necessary decisions at the bedside. Three different models have been developed for data sharing in AI, and all have their advantages and disadvantages[2,62-65].

Centralized models require sharing of large amounts of data by different sources (*i.e* institutions). This data is uploaded into a central server that carries out the algorithmic adjustments. Once trained, the central server shares the finalized algorithm with the individual sources for internal use. The main drawback of this model is that centralization of the information in the server may increase the risk of a security breach, as the individual source no longer controls the information (Figure 2). In distributed or federated models, each source develops and adjusts its own algorithm with internal data. Once each source has fine-tuned their algorithm, they share its parameters with a central server. The central server then utilizes all the individual parameters to develop a centralized algorithm that later gets returned to the source for internal use (Figure 3). The main advantage of this model is that data is not shared with the central server. In hybrid models features of both models are present. A data repository is created to be shared by both data providers and the central server. The data repository then develops an algorithm using each individual institution's data before it gets sent to the central server. The central server then updates the master algorithm before it gets sent back to the data repository (Figure 4).

The quality of data currently utilized in AI needs to be improved. Most of the AI systems used in data analysis so far have been trained and tested with rather small datasets originating from within local institutions. This raises the issue of information bias. These datasets lack the degree of diversity necessary to mirror the scenarios human providers face during routine clinical practice. For AI systems to perform adequately, the datasets need to be sufficiently diverse in all the possible variables that come into play when making clinical decisions (demographics, medical and/or family history, physical and laboratory findings and others). Therefore, datasets need to

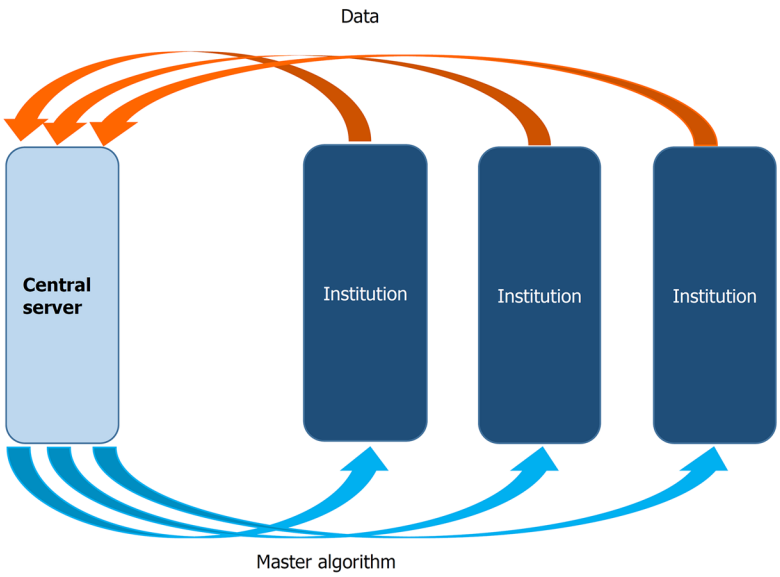


Figure 2 Centralized artificial intelligence information sharing system. Each individual institution provides data to the central server. The server analyzes all the data and develops and algorithm that is sent to each institution. This algorithm is then used by each institution to analyze its own internal data in the future.

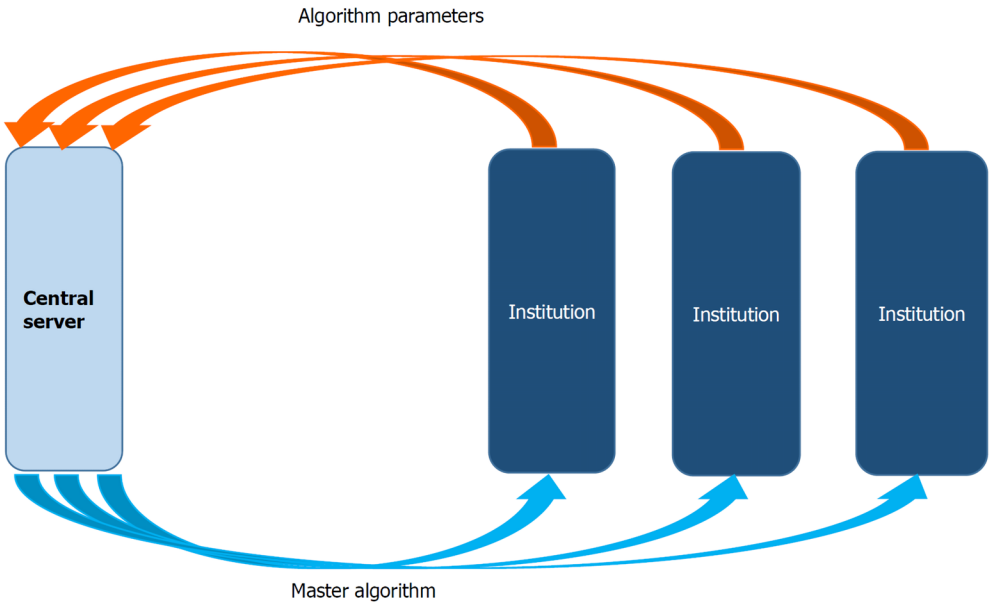


Figure 3 Federated artificial intelligence information sharing system. Each individual institution develops its own algorithm with internal data. Once the algorihms are developed, their parameters are shared with the central server. The server then develops a master algorithm using all the individual parameters. The master algorighm is sent back to the institutions for its internal use.

originate from a variety of sources for them to be representative and inclusive, not from a limited number of large academic medical centers or research institutions.

Another shortcoming is the fact that the average ANN functions as a "black box"[66]. As such, how a specific variable in a dataset is weighted by specific nodes in the network is currently uninterpretable. When evaluating the performance of any ANN, clinicians, mathematicians and computer scientists need to understand the "reasoning" that occurs within the hidden layers. Although questioning of ANNs is possible through mathematical reasoning, it does not reflect clinical decision making. Understanding the way in which ANNs analyze information is paramount for improving their performance and correcting errors that can lead to fatal consequences.

Finally, much of the promise of applying AI in medical image analysis depends on the ability to get actionable results rapidly. The current need for multiple intricate post-processing steps prior to its analysis, indicates that much more work must be

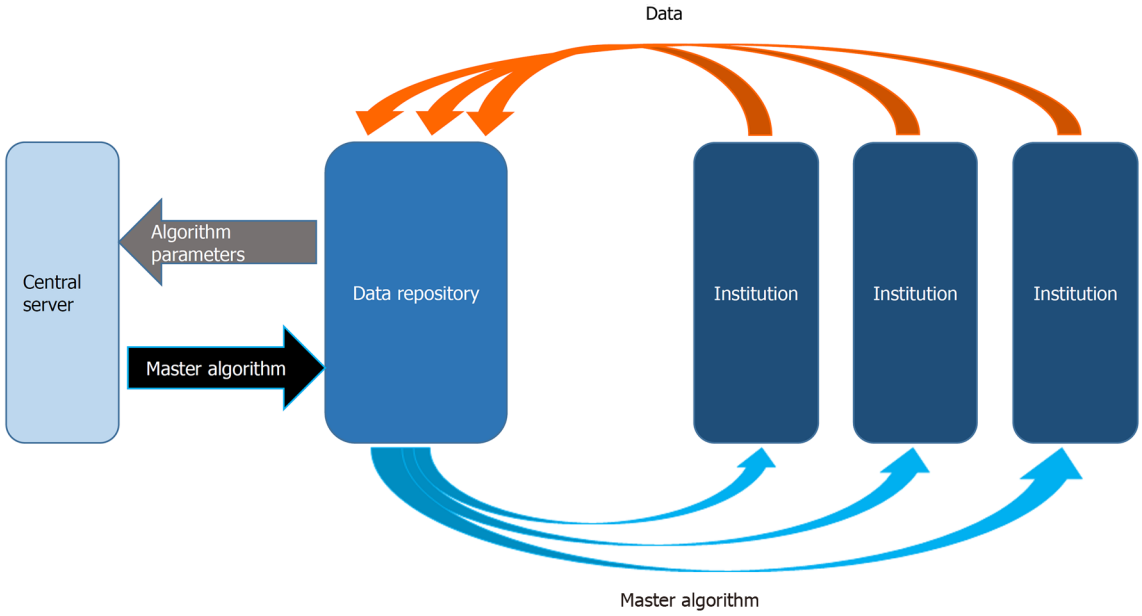


Figure 4 Hybrid artificial intelligence infromation sharing system. A data repository is created as an intermediary between the institutions and the central server. The data repository develops one or more algorithm(s) with the data. The parameters of these algorithms are then shared with the central server to create a master algorithm which is then returned to the repository. New data coming from the institutions is then used by the repository to create new parameters that are then sent to the central server to renew the master algorithm.

done to develop this into a technology that provides "on-the-fly" results[63].

Because of the limitations enumerated above, it is clear that major improvements to the technology need to occur before AI can support everyday activities in clinical practice. It is evident however, that medicine has reached a "point of no return" regarding application of AI. Overcoming these hurdles will require collaboration between academic centers, industry, computer scientists, venture capitalists, regulating organizations and governments (Figure 5). The main goals of this collaboration should be streamlining development of standard data platforms, lowering technology costs and making the technology more "user friendly" so that any provider can use it in real time.

CONCLUSION

With further research, AI could have a large impact on the diagnosis and treatment of PDAC in the future. Novel screening methods are needed, and AI analysis of large comprehensive clinical datasets may yield opportunity for early detection or even predict development of PDAC before a visible lesion can be seen on imaging. An AI protocol which prescreens computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging prior to a radiologist reading the study could ensure that lesions will not be missed due to human error. "On the fly" AI assistance with endoscopic ultrasound imaging could help the endosonographer optimally target a needle biopsy of a mass. The pathologist can be assisted by an AI algorithm that analyzes the biopsy on the slide that is being read. And AI could prove very useful for following response to treatment and even in suggesting optimal treatment regimens, with personalized treatment strategies based on biological profiling. While AI applications in PDAC are still in the very early stage of development, further investment in research could lead to substantial improvements in screening, early diagnosis, and treatment.

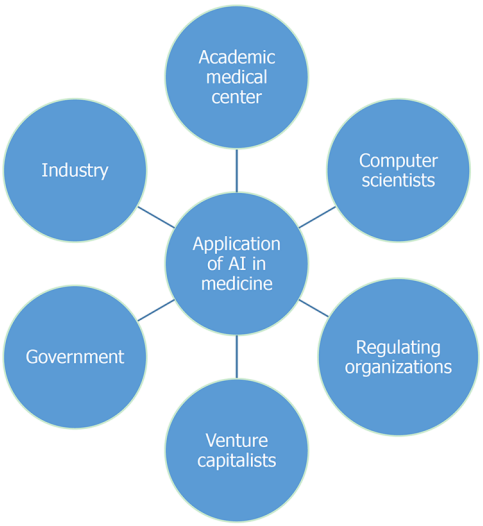


Figure 5 Collaboration to expedite broad artificial intelligence application in medicine. AI: Artificial intelligence.

REFERENCES

1 **Arnold M**, Rutherford MJ, Bardot A, Ferlay J, Andersson TM, Myklebust TÅ, Tervonen H, Thursfield V, Ransom D, Shack L, Woods RR, Turner D, Leonfellner S, Ryan S, Saint-Jacques N, De P, McClure C, Ramanakumar AV, Stuart-Panko H, Engholm G, Walsh PM, Jackson C, Vernon S, Morgan E, Gavin A, Morrison DS, Huws DW, Porter G, Butler J, Bryant H, Currow DC, Hiom S, Parkin DM, Sasieni P, Lambert PC, Møller B, Soerjomataram I, Bray F. Progress in cancer survival, mortality, and incidence in seven high-income countries 1995-2014 (ICBP SURVMARK-2): a population-based study. *Lancet Oncol* 2019; **20**: 1493-1505 [PMID: 31521509 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(19)30456-5]

2 **Young MR**, Abrams N, Ghosh S, Rinaudo JAS, Marquez G, Srivastava S. Prediagnostic Image Data, Artificial Intelligence, and Pancreatic Cancer: A Tell-Tale Sign to Early Detection. *Pancreas* 2020; **49**: 882-886 [PMID: 32675784 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000001603]

3 **Bray F**, Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Siegel RL, Torre LA, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics 2018: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2018; **68**: 394-424 [PMID: 30207593 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21492]

4 **Tang A**, Tam R, Cadrin-Chênevert A, Guest W, Chong J, Barfett J, Chepelev L, Cairns R, Mitchell JR, Cicero MD, Poudrette MG, Jaremko JL, Reinhold C, Gallix B, Gray B, Geis R; Canadian Association of Radiologists (CAR) Artificial Intelligence Working Group. Canadian Association of Radiologists White Paper on Artificial Intelligence in Radiology. *Can Assoc Radiol J* 2018; **69**: 120-135 [PMID: 29655580 DOI: 10.1016/j.carj.2018.02.002]

5 **Nwanganga F**, Chapple M. What Is Machine Learning? 2020 [DOI: 10.1002/9781119591542.ch1]

6 **Shalev-Shwartz S**, Ben-David S. Understanding machine learning: From theory to algorithms: Cambridge university press, 2014 [cited 10 March 2021]. Available from: http://www.cs.huji.ac.il/~shais/UnderstandingMachineLearning/copy.html

7 **Le Berre C**, Sandborn WJ, Aridhi S, Devignes MD, Fournier L, Smaïl-Tabbone M, Danese S, Peyrin-Biroulet L. Application of Artificial Intelligence to Gastroenterology and Hepatology. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 76-94. e2 [PMID: 31593701 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.08.058]

8 **Gillies RJ**, Kinahan PE, Hricak H. Radiomics: Images Are More than Pictures, They Are Data. *Radiology* 2016; **278**: 563-577 [PMID: 26579733 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2015151169]

9 **Shahid N**, Rappon T, Berta W. Applications of artificial neural networks in health care organizational decision-making: A scoping review. *PLoS One* 2019; **14**: e0212356 [PMID: 30779785 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0212356]

10 **LeCun Y**, Bengio Y, Hinton G. Deep learning. *Nature* 2015; **521**: 436-444 [PMID: 26017442 DOI: 10.1038/nature14539]

11 **Kitano M**, Yoshida T, Itonaga M, Tamura T, Hatamaru K, Yamashita Y. Impact of endoscopic ultrasonography on diagnosis of pancreatic cancer. *J Gastroenterol* 2019; **54**: 19-32 [PMID: 30406288 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-018-1519-2]

12 **Krishna NB**, Mehra M, Reddy AV, Agarwal B. EUS/EUS-FNA for suspected pancreatic cancer: influence of chronic pancreatitis and clinical presentation with or without obstructive jaundice on performance characteristics. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **70**: 70-79 [PMID: 19249774 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.10.030]

13 **Fritscher-Ravens A**, Brand L, Knöfel WT, Bobrowski C, Topalidis T, Thonke F, de Werth A, Soehendra N. Comparison of endoscopic ultrasound-guided fine needle aspiration for focal pancreatic lesions in patients with normal parenchyma and chronic pancreatitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 2768-2775 [PMID: 12425546 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2002.07020.x]

14 **Norton ID**, Zheng Y, Wiersema MS, Greenleaf J, Clain JE, Dimagno EP. Neural network analysis of EUS images to differentiate between pancreatic malignancy and pancreatitis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2001; **54**: 625-629 [PMID: 11677484 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2001.118644]

15 **Ozkan M**, Cakiroglu M, Kocaman O, Kurt M, Yilmaz B, Can G, Korkmaz U, Dandil E, Eksi Z. Age-based computer-aided diagnosis approach for pancreatic cancer on endoscopic ultrasound images. *Endosc Ultrasound* 2016; **5**: 101-107 [PMID: 27080608 DOI: 10.4103/2303-9027.180473]

16 **Zhang MM**, Yang H, Jin ZD, Yu JG, Cai ZY, Li ZS. Differential diagnosis of pancreatic cancer from normal tissue with digital imaging processing and pattern recognition based on a support vector machine of EUS images. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **72**: 978-985 [PMID: 20855062 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.06.042]

17 **Das A**, Nguyen CC, Li F, Li B. Digital image analysis of EUS images accurately differentiates pancreatic cancer from chronic pancreatitis and normal tissue. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **67**: 861-867 [PMID: 18179797 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.08.036]

18 **Zhu M**, Xu C, Yu J, Wu Y, Li C, Zhang M, Jin Z, Li Z. Differentiation of pancreatic cancer and chronic pancreatitis using computer-aided diagnosis of endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) images: a diagnostic test. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e63820 [PMID: 23704940 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0063820]

19 **Giovannini M**, Hookey LC, Bories E, Pesenti C, Monges G, Delpero JR. Endoscopic ultrasound elastography: the first step towards virtual biopsy? *Endoscopy* 2006; **38**: 344-348 [PMID: 16680632 DOI: 10.1055/s-2006-925158]

20 **Săftoiu A**, Vilmann P, Gorunescu F, Janssen J, Hocke M, Larsen M, Iglesias-Garcia J, Arcidiacono P, Will U, Giovannini M, Dietrich CF, Havre R, Gheorghe C, McKay C, Gheonea DI, Ciurea T; European EUS Elastography Multicentric Study Group. Efficacy of an artificial neural network-based approach to endoscopic ultrasound elastography in diagnosis of focal pancreatic masses. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **10**: 84-90. e1 [PMID: 21963957 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2011.09.014]

21 **Săftoiu A**, Vilmann P, Gorunescu F, Gheonea DI, Gorunescu M, Ciurea T, Popescu GL, Iordache A, Hassan H, Iordache S. Neural network analysis of dynamic sequences of EUS elastography used for the differential diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis and pancreatic cancer. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 1086-1094 [PMID: 18656186 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.04.031]

22 **Săftoiu A**, Vilmann P, Dietrich CF, Iglesias-Garcia J, Hocke M, Seicean A, Ignee A, Hassan H, Streba CT, Ioncică AM, Gheonea DI, Ciurea T. Quantitative contrast-enhanced harmonic EUS in differential diagnosis of focal pancreatic masses (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; **82**: 59-69 [PMID: 25792386 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.11.040]

23 **Hosny A**, Parmar C, Quackenbush J, Schwartz LH, Aerts HJWL. Artificial intelligence in radiology. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2018; **18**: 500-510 [PMID: 29777175 DOI: 10.1038/s41568-018-0016-5]

24 **Fu M**, Wu W, Hong X, Liu Q, Jiang J, Ou Y, Zhao Y, Gong X. Hierarchical combinatorial deep learning architecture for pancreas segmentation of medical computed tomography cancer images. *BMC Syst Biol* 2018; **12**: 56 [PMID: 29745840 DOI: 10.1186/s12918-018-0572-z]

25 **Chu LC**, Park S, Kawamoto S, Fouladi DF, Shayesteh S, Zinreich ES, Graves JS, Horton KM, Hruban RH, Yuille AL, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Fishman EK. Utility of CT Radiomics Features in Differentiation of Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma From Normal Pancreatic Tissue. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2019; **213**: 349-357 [PMID: 31012758 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.18.20901]

26 **Liu SL**, Li S, Guo YT, Zhou YP, Zhang ZD, Lu Y. Establishment and application of an artificial intelligence diagnosis system for pancreatic cancer with a faster region-based convolutional neural network. *Chin Med J (Engl)* 2019; **132**: 2795-2803 [PMID: 31856050 DOI: 10.1097/CM9.0000000000000544]

27 **Koay EJ**, Lee Y, Cristini V, Lowengrub JS, Kang Y, Lucas FAS, Hobbs BP, Ye R, Elganainy D, Almahariq M, Amer AM, Chatterjee D, Yan H, Park PC, Rios Perez MV, Li D, Garg N, Reiss KA, Yu S, Chauhan A, Zaid M, Nikzad N, Wolff RA, Javle M, Varadhachary GR, Shroff RT, Das P, Lee JE, Ferrari M, Maitra A, Taniguchi CM, Kim MP, Crane CH, Katz MH, Wang H, Bhosale P, Tamm EP, Fleming JB. A Visually Apparent and Quantifiable CT Imaging Feature Identifies Biophysical Subtypes of Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res* 2018; **24**: 5883-5894 [PMID: 30082477 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-17-3668]

28 **Qiu W**, Duan N, Chen X, Ren S, Zhang Y, Wang Z, Chen R. Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma: Machine Learning-Based Quantitative Computed Tomography Texture Analysis For Prediction Of Histopathological Grade. *Cancer Manag Res* 2019; **11**: 9253-9264 [PMID: 31802945 DOI: 10.2147/CMAR.S218414]

29 **Chu LC**, Park S, Kawamoto S, Wang Y, Zhou Y, Shen W, Zhu Z, Xia Y, Xie L, Liu F, Yu Q, Fouladi DF, Shayesteh S, Zinreich E, Graves JS, Horton KM, Yuille AL, Hruban RH, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Fishman EK. Application of Deep Learning to Pancreatic Cancer Detection: Lessons Learned From Our Initial Experience. *J Am Coll Radiol* 2019; **16**: 1338-1342 [PMID: 31492412 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacr.2019.05.034]

30 **Bobo MF**, Bao S, Huo Y, Yao Y, Virostko J, Plassard AJ, Lyu I, Assad A, Abramson RG, Hilmes MA, Landman BA. Fully Convolutional Neural Networks Improve Abdominal Organ Segmentation. *Proc SPIE Int Soc Opt Eng* 2018; **10574** [PMID: 29887665 DOI: 10.1117/12.2293751]

31 **Shen J**, Baum T, Cordes C, Ott B, Skurk T, Kooijman H, Rummeny EJ, Hauner H, Menze BH, Karampinos DC. Automatic segmentation of abdominal organs and adipose tissue compartments in water-fat MRI: Application to weight-loss in obesity. *Eur J Radiol* 2016; **85**: 1613-1621 [PMID: 27501897 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejrad.2016.06.006]

32 **Devi BA**, Rajasekaran MP. Performance evaluation of MRI pancreas image classification using

artificial neural network (ANN). Smart Intelligent Computing and Applications: Springer, 2019: 671-681 [DOI: 10.1007/978-981-13-1921-1_65]

33 **Gao X**, Wang X. Performance of deep learning for differentiating pancreatic diseases on contrast-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging: A preliminary study. *Diagn Interv Imaging* 2020; **101**: 91-100 [PMID: 31375430 DOI: 10.1016/j.diii.2019.07.002]

34 **Liang Y**, Schott D, Zhang Y, Wang Z, Nasief H, Paulson E, Hall W, Knechtges P, Erickson B, Li XA. Auto-segmentation of pancreatic tumor in multi-parametric MRI using deep convolutional neural networks. *Radiother Oncol* 2020; **145**: 193-200 [PMID: 32045787 DOI: 10.1016/j.radonc.2020.01.021]

35 **Spieler B**, Patel N, Breto A, Ford J, Stoyanova R, Zavala-Romero O, Mellon E, Portelance L. Automatic segmentation of abdominal anatomy by artificial intelligence (AI) in adaptive radiotherapy of pancreatic cancer. *INT J Radiat Oncol* 2019; **105**: E130-E131 [DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2019.06.2261]

36 **Zhao W**, Shen L, Han B, Yang Y, Cheng K, Toesca DAS, Koong AC, Chang DT, Xing L. Markerless Pancreatic Tumor Target Localization Enabled By Deep Learning. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2019; **105**: 432-439 [PMID: 31201892 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2019.05.071]

37 **Campbell WG**, Miften M, Olsen L, Stumpf P, Schefter T, Goodman KA, Jones BL. Neural network dose models for knowledge-based planning in pancreatic SBRT. *Med Phys* 2017; **44**: 6148-6158 [PMID: 28994459 DOI: 10.1002/mp.12621]

38 **Kaissis G**, Ziegelmayer S, Lohöfer F, Steiger K, Algül H, Muckenhuber A, Yen HY, Rummeny E, Friess H, Schmid R, Weichert W, Siveke JT, Braren R. A machine learning algorithm predicts molecular subtypes in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma with differential response to gemcitabine-based *vs* FOLFIRINOX chemotherapy. *PLoS One* 2019; **14**: e0218642 [PMID: 31577805 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0218642]

39 **Kaissis G**, Ziegelmayer S, Lohöfer F, Algül H, Eiber M, Weichert W, Schmid R, Friess H, Rummeny E, Ankerst D, Siveke J, Braren R. A machine learning model for the prediction of survival and tumor subtype in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma from preoperative diffusion-weighted imaging. *Eur Radiol Exp* 2019; **3**: 41 [PMID: 31624935 DOI: 10.1186/s41747-019-0119-0]

40 **Sala Elarre P**, Oyaga-Iriarte E, Yu KH, Baudin V, Arbea Moreno L, Carranza O, Chopitea Ortega A, Ponz-Sarvise M, Mejías Sosa LD, Rotellar Sastre F, Larrea Leoz B, Iragorri Barberena Y, Subtil Iñigo JC, Benito Boíllos A, Pardo F, Rodríguez Rodríguez J. Use of Machine-Learning Algorithms in Intensified Preoperative Therapy of Pancreatic Cancer to Predict Individual Risk of Relapse. *Cancers (Basel)* 2019; **11** [PMID: 31052270 DOI: 10.3390/cancers11050606]

41 **Tang TY**, Li X, Zhang Q, Guo CX, Zhang XZ, Lao MY, Shen YN, Xiao WB, Ying SH, Sun K, Yu RS, Gao SL, Que RS, Chen W, Huang DB, Pang PP, Bai XL, Liang TB. Development of a Novel Multiparametric MRI Radiomic Nomogram for Preoperative Evaluation of Early Recurrence in Resectable Pancreatic Cancer. *J Magn Reson Imaging* 2020; **52**: 231-245 [PMID: 31867839 DOI: 10.1002/jmri.27024]

42 **Muhammad W**, Hart GR, Nartowt B, Farrell JJ, Johung K, Liang Y, Deng J. Pancreatic cancer prediction through an artificial neural network. Frontiers in Artificial Intelligence 2019; 2: 2 [DOI: 10.3389/frai.2019.00002]

43 **Klein AP**, Lindström S, Mendelsohn JB, Steplowski E, Arslan AA, Bueno-de-Mesquita HB, Fuchs CS, Gallinger S, Gross M, Helzlsouer K, Holly EA, Jacobs EJ, Lacroix A, Li D, Mandelson MT, Olson SH, Petersen GM, Risch HA, Stolzenberg-Solomon RZ, Zheng W, Amundadottir L, Albanes D, Allen NE, Bamlet WR, Boutron-Ruault MC, Buring JE, Bracci PM, Canzian F, Clipp S, Cotterchio M, Duell EJ, Elena J, Gaziano JM, Giovannucci EL, Goggins M, Hallmans G, Hassan M, Hutchinson A, Hunter DJ, Kooperberg C, Kurtz RC, Liu S, Overvad K, Palli D, Patel AV, Rabe KG, Shu XO, Slimani N, Tobias GS, Trichopoulos D, Van Den Eeden SK, Vineis P, Virtamo J, Wactawski-Wende J, Wolpin BM, Yu H, Yu K, Zeleniuch-Jacquotte A, Chanock SJ, Hoover RN, Hartge P, Kraft P. An absolute risk model to identify individuals at elevated risk for pancreatic cancer in the general population. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e72311 [PMID: 24058443 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0072311]

44 **Sharma A**, Kandlakunta H, Nagpal SJS, Feng Z, Hoos W, Petersen GM, Chari ST. Model to Determine Risk of Pancreatic Cancer in Patients With New-Onset Diabetes. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **155**: 730-739. e3 [PMID: 29775599 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.05.023]

45 **Hsieh MH**, Sun LM, Lin CL, Hsieh MJ, Hsu CY, Kao CH. Development of a prediction model for pancreatic cancer in patients with type 2 diabetes using logistic regression and artificial neural network models. *Cancer Manag Res* 2018; **10**: 6317-6324 [PMID: 30568493 DOI: 10.2147/CMAR.S180791]

46 **Zhao D**, Weng C. Combining PubMed knowledge and EHR data to develop a weighted bayesian network for pancreatic cancer prediction. *J Biomed Inform* 2011; **44**: 859-868 [PMID: 21642013 DOI: 10.1016/j.jbi.2011.05.004]

47 **Sanoob M**, Madhu A, Ajesh K, Varghese SM. Artificial neural network for diagnosis of pancreatic cancer. *I J C I* 2016; **5**: 40-49 [DOI: 10.5121/ijci.2016.5205]

48 **Walczak S**, Velanovich V. An Evaluation of Artificial Neural Networks in Predicting Pancreatic Cancer Survival. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2017; **21**: 1606-1612 [PMID: 28776157 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-017-3518-7]

49 **Hayward J**, Alvarez SA, Ruiz C, Sullivan M, Tseng J, Whalen G. Machine learning of clinical performance in a pancreatic cancer database. *Artif Intell Med* 2010; **49**: 187-195 [PMID: 20483571 DOI: 10.1016/j.artmed.2010.04.009]

50 **Cheng JY**, Abel JT, Balis UGJ, McClintock DS, Pantanowitz L. Challenges in the Development, Deployment, and Regulation of Artificial Intelligence in Anatomic Pathology. *Am J Pathol* 2020 [PMID: 33245914 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajpath.2020.10.018]

51 **Hanna MG**, Parwani A, Sirintrapun SJ. Whole Slide Imaging: Technology and Applications. *Adv Anat Pathol* 2020; **27**: 251-259 [PMID: 32452840 DOI: 10.1097/PAP.0000000000000273]

52 **Cima L**, Brunelli M, Parwani A, Girolami I, Ciangherotti A, Riva G, Novelli L, Vanzo F, Sorio A, Cirielli V, Barbareschi M, D'Errico A, Scarpa A, Bovo C, Fraggetta F, Pantanowitz L, Eccher A. Validation of Remote Digital Frozen Sections for Cancer and Transplant Intraoperative Services. *J Pathol Inform* 2018; **9**: 34 [PMID: 30450263 DOI: 10.4103/jpi.jpi_52_18]

53 **Hanna MG**, Reuter VE, Ardon O, Kim D, Sirintrapun SJ, Schüffler PJ, Busam KJ, Sauter JL, Brogi E, Tan LK, Xu B, Bale T, Agaram NP, Tang LH, Ellenson LH, Philip J, Corsale L, Stamelos E, Friedlander MA, Ntiamoah P, Labasin M, England C, Klimstra DS, Hameed M. Validation of a digital pathology system including remote review during the COVID-19 pandemic. *Mod Pathol* 2020; **33**: 2115-2127 [PMID: 32572154 DOI: 10.1038/s41379-020-0601-5]

54 **Diehl DL**. Artificial intelligence applications in endoscopic ultrasound: "The journey of a thousand miles begins with a single step". *Gastrointest Endosc* 2021; In press

55 **Yoshida T**, Yamashita Y, Kitano M. Endoscopic Ultrasound for Early Diagnosis of Pancreatic Cancer. *Diagnostics (Basel)* 2019; **9** [PMID: 31344904 DOI: 10.3390/diagnostics9030081]

56 **Momeni-Boroujeni A**, Yousefi E, Somma J. Computer-assisted cytologic diagnosis in pancreatic FNA: An application of neural networks to image analysis. *Cancer Cytopathol* 2017; **125**: 926-933 [PMID: 28885766 DOI: 10.1002/cncy.21915]

57 **Sinkala M**, Mulder N, Martin D. Machine Learning and Network Analyses Reveal Disease Subtypes of Pancreatic Cancer and their Molecular Characteristics. *Sci Rep* 2020; **10**: 1212 [PMID: 31988390 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-020-58290-2]

58 **Bhasin MK**, Ndebele K, Bucur O, Yee EU, Otu HH, Plati J, Bullock A, Gu X, Castan E, Zhang P, Najarian R, Muraru MS, Miksad R, Khosravi-Far R, Libermann TA. Meta-analysis of transcriptome data identifies a novel 5-gene pancreatic adenocarcinoma classifier. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 23263-23281 [PMID: 26993610 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.8139]

59 **Almeida PP**, Cardoso CP, de Freitas LM. PDAC-ANN: an artificial neural network to predict pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma based on gene expression. *BMC Cancer* 2020; **20**: 82 [PMID: 32005189 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-020-6533-0]

60 **Barretina J**, Caponigro G, Stransky N, Venkatesan K, Margolin AA, Kim S, Wilson CJ, Lehár J, Kryukov GV, Sonkin D, Reddy A, Liu M, Murray L, Berger MF, Monahan JE, Morais P, Meltzer J, Korejwa A, Jané-Valbuena J, Mapa FA, Thibault J, Bric-Furlong E, Raman P, Shipway A, Engels IH, Cheng J, Yu GK, Yu J, Aspesi P Jr, de Silva M, Jagtap K, Jones MD, Wang L, Hatton C, Palescandolo E, Gupta S, Mahan S, Sougnez C, Onofrio RC, Liefeld T, MacConaill L, Winckler W, Reich M, Li N, Mesirov JP, Gabriel SB, Getz G, Ardlie K, Chan V, Myer VE, Weber BL, Porter J, Warmuth M, Finan P, Harris JL, Meyerson M, Golub TR, Morrissey MP, Sellers WR, Schlegel R, Garraway LA. The Cancer Cell Line Encyclopedia enables predictive modelling of anticancer drug sensitivity. *Nature* 2012; **483**: 603-607 [PMID: 22460905 DOI: 10.1038/nature11003]

61 **Menden MP**, Iorio F, Garnett M, McDermott U, Benes CH, Ballester PJ, Saez-Rodriguez J. Machine learning prediction of cancer cell sensitivity to drugs based on genomic and chemical properties. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e61318 [PMID: 23646105 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0061318]

62 **Chang K**, Balachandar N, Lam C, Yi D, Brown J, Beers A, Rosen B, Rubin DL, Kalpathy-Cramer J. Distributed deep learning networks among institutions for medical imaging. *J Am Med Inform Assoc* 2018; **25**: 945-954 [PMID: 29617797 DOI: 10.1093/jamia/ocy017]

63 **Sheller MJ**, Reina GA, Edwards B, Martin J, Bakas S. Multi-Institutional Deep Learning Modeling Without Sharing Patient Data: A Feasibility Study on Brain Tumor Segmentation. *Brainlesion* 2019; **11383**: 92-104 [PMID: 31231720 DOI: 10.1007/978-3-030-11723-8_9]

64 **Guinney J**, Saez-Rodriguez J. Alternative models for sharing confidential biomedical data. *Nat Biotechnol* 2018; **36**: 391-392 [PMID: 29734317 DOI: 10.1038/nbt.4128]

65 **Deist TM**, Dankers FJWM, Ojha P, Scott Marshall M, Janssen T, Faivre-Finn C, Masciocchi C, Valentini V, Wang J, Chen J, Zhang Z, Spezi E, Button M, Jan Nuyttens J, Vernhout R, van Soest J, Jochems A, Monshouwer R, Bussink J, Price G, Lambin P, Dekker A. Distributed learning on 20 000+ lung cancer patients - The Personal Health Train. *Radiother Oncol* 2020; **144**: 189-200 [PMID: 31911366 DOI: 10.1016/j.radonc.2019.11.019]

66 **Ford RA**, Price W, Nicholson I. Privacy and accountability in black-box medicine. *Mich Telecomm & Tech L Rev* 2016; **23**: 1

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2021 April 7; 27(13): 1296-1310

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1296

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

COVID-19 and comorbidities of hepatic diseases in a global perspective

Aqsa Ahmad, Syeda Momna Ishtiaq, Junaid Ali Khan, Rizwan Aslam, Sultan Ali, Muhammad Imran Arshad

ORCID number: Aqsa Ahmad 0000-0002-8546-4327; Syeda Momna Ishtiaq 0000-0003-3138-8733; Junaid Ali Khan 0000-0003-2630-1744; Rizwan Aslam 0000-0002-5065-4462; Sultan Ali 0000-0001-8985-7729; Muhammad Imran Arshad 0000-0003-2218-9054.

Author contributions: Ahmad A and Ishtiaq SM contributed literature review, wrote the manuscript and analyzed the data, and contributed equally to this work; Arshad MI and Khan JA conceived the idea, collected data and contributed to the writing of the article; Aslam R and Ali S proof-read the manuscript and contributed to data-mining and editing.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no competing and financial conflict of interests.

Aqsa Ahmad, Rizwan Aslam, Sultan Ali, Muhammad Imran Arshad, Institute of Microbiology, University of Agriculture Faisalabad, Faisalabad 38040, Punjab, Pakistan

Syeda Momna Ishtiaq, Junaid Ali Khan, Institute of Physiology and Pharmacology, University of Agriculture Faisalabad, Faisalabad 38040, Punjab, Pakistan

Corresponding author: Muhammad Imran Arshad, PhD, Assistant Professor, Institute of Microbiology, University of Agriculture Faisalabad, Main Agriculture University and Jail Road, Faisalabad 38040, Punjab, Pakistan. drimranarshad@yahoo.com

Abstract

The worldwide outbreak of coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) has challenged the priorities of healthcare system in terms of different clinical management and infection transmission, particularly those related to hepatic-disease comorbidities. Epidemiological data evidenced that COVID-19 patients with altered liver function because of hepatitis infection and cholestasis have an adverse prognosis and experience worse health outcomes. COVID-19-associated liver injury is correlated with various liver diseases following a severe acute respiratory syndrome-coronavirus type 2 (SARS-CoV-2) infection that can progress during the treatment of COVID-19 patients with or without pre-existing liver disease. SARS-CoV-2 can induce liver injury in a number of ways including direct cytopathic effect of the virus on cholangiocytes/hepatocytes, immune-mediated damage, hypoxia, and sepsis. Indeed, immediate cytopathogenic effects of SARS-CoV-2 *via* its potential target, the angiotensin-converting enzyme-2 receptor, which is highly expressed in hepatocytes and cholangiocytes, renders the liver as an extra-respiratory organ with increased susceptibility to pathological outcomes. But, underlying COVID-19-linked liver disease pathogenesis with abnormal liver function tests (LFTs) is incompletely understood. Hence, we collated COVID-19-associated liver injuries with increased LFTs at the nexus of pre-existing liver diseases and COVID-19, and defining a plausible pathophysiological triad of COVID-19, hepatocellular damage, and liver disease. This review summarizes recent findings of the exacerbating role of COVID-19 in pre-existing liver disease and vice versa as well as international guidelines of clinical care, management, and treatment recommendations for COVID-19 patients with liver disease.

Key Words: Liver disease; COVID-19; Pathophysiology; Epidemiology; Prophylaxis

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Pakistan

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: January 18, 2021
Peer-review started: January 18, 2021
First decision: February 9, 2021
Revised: February 17, 2021
Accepted: March 19, 2021
Article in press: March 19, 2021
Published online: April 7, 2021

P-Reviewer: Altruda F
S-Editor: Gao CC
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Wang LL

Core Tip: The clinical menace of coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19)-related comorbidities of hepatic diseases and severe acute respiratory syndrome-coronavirus type 2 (SARS-CoV-2) tropism for the liver result in liver impairment with increased liver injury markers and cytokine storm. SARS-CoV-2 aggravates liver injury *via* coagulative and fibrinolytic pathways, cytokine-mediated liver injury, ischemia-hypoxia, and immune-mediated cell death pathways owing to adverse outcomes of liver disease such as nonalcoholic steatohepatitis, drug-induced liver injury, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, metabolic associated fatty liver disease, and hepatocellular carcinoma. This review summarizes diagnostic approaches, therapeutics, clinical guidelines, and vaccines for COVID-19 and liver disease comorbidities.

Citation: Ahmad A, Ishtiaq SM, Khan JA, Aslam R, Ali S, Arshad MI. COVID-19 and comorbidities of hepatic diseases in a global perspective. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(13): 1296-1310
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i13/1296.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1296

INTRODUCTION

Coronavirus belongs to family *Coronaviridae*, subfamily *Orthocoronavirinae*, and order Nidovirales[1]. All over the world, coronaviruses are responsible for causing enteric, neurologic, and hepatic diseases in humans, animals, and other mammals[2]. On the basis of genome and phylogenetic analysis, the subfamily contains four genera named *Alphacoronavirus*, *Betacoronavirus*, *Gammacoronavirus*, and *Deltacoronavirus*[3]. Coronaviruses caused epidemics of severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus (SARS-CoV) in 2003 and Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus (MERS-CoV) in 2012[2]. The novel coronavirus 2019 (SARS-CoV-2)- belongs to genus *Betacoronavirus*. It is an enveloped virus with a positive-sense, single-stranded RNA genome. SARS-CoV-2 has affected more than 65.8 million people with 1.5 million deaths globally.

In early December 2019, the first documented pneumonia case of unknown origin in Wuhan city of China was confirmed by high-throughput sequencing analysis as a novel *Betacoronavirus* that is currently named SARS-CoV-2. A sudden worldwide outbreak of this virus was declared as health emergency and pandemic of international concern by the World Health Organization (WHO)[4]. In previous epidemics of SARS-CoV and MERS-CoV, bats were considered as the natural host and potential reservoir. Different studies evidenced bats as a reservoir of SARS-CoV-2, however, pangolin species were also considered as natural reservoir of SARS-CoV-2[5].

In the SARS pandemic, the virus was found in patient's stool sample[6], which indicates that fecal samples could be a possible source of transmission of SARS-CoV-2[7]. After clinical recovery, prolonged shedding of SARS-CoV-2 in feces highlighted the possibility of fecal-oral transmission[8]. Positive semen samples containing SARS-CoV-2 have also been observed in two patients who were in recovery and in four who were in the acute stage of infection[9]. Recently, an ocular route of transmission has also been identified in SARS-CoV-2[10].

Symptoms of coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) vary from mild respiratory symptoms to acute respiratory distress syndrome along with multiple organ failure[11] and death, mainly in elderly patients having several comorbidities. The WHO provided timely, effective, and safe supportive management guidelines for COVID-19 patients, which revealed that clinical syndromes associated with SARS-CoV-2 include uncomplicated illness, mild-to-severe pneumonia, acute respiratory distress syndrome, sepsis, and septic shock[12]. However, gastrointestinal symptoms[13] and several extra-pulmonary signs such as liver injury have also been associated with COVID-19[14].

In COVID-19 patients, markers of liver injury may be abnormal[15]. As shown in Table 1, disturbed alanine transaminase (ALT), aspartate transaminase (AST) levels and increased bilirubin have been seen in 14%-53% of COVID-19 patients[16]. A recent study of 1100 patients reported that 18% patients with nonsevere and 56% with severe COVID-19 had elevated serum AST levels. Increased ALT levels were observed in 20% of patients with nonsevere and 28% with severe COVID-19 infection[17]. Moreover, it has been noted that COVID-19 patients with gastrointestinal symptoms showed a high

Table 1 Prevalence of coronavirus disease 2019 patients with altered manifestations of hepatic injury markers

Salient findings	Country	Ref.
Of 417 COVID-19 patients, 76.3% had altered values of liver function tests and 21.5% had liver injury during hospitalization. The use of lopinavir/ritonavir increased the risks of liver injury by 4-fold.	China	Cai *et al*[32], 2020
The prevalence of patients with GI symptoms and elevated level of liver enzymes was 18.6%. The severity of disease increased in patients with digestive symptoms.	China	Pan *et al*[81], 2020
Abnormal liver function tests are common in COVID-19 patients. Of 115 patients, 9.57% had increased ALT levels and 14.78% had increased AST levels.	China	Zhang *et al*[82], 2020
Liver dysfunction at an early stage increases the mortality risk in COVID-19 patients. A total of 151 patients (42.5%) were reported with cholestasis and 101 (28.5%) had hepatocellular injury. Liver dysfunction was more common in critically ill patients.	China	Fu *et al*[83], 2020
About 48.4% of patients with normal liver function had abnormal liver function tests after receiving lopinavir/ritonavir. Liver injury biomarkers (LDH, ALP, GGT, TBiL, prealbumin, and albumin) were dysregulated in a cohort of 288 COVID-19 patients, suggestive of potential as markers of liver injury and a prognosis of severe of COVID-19 disease.	China	Fan *et al*[37], 2020 and Fan *et al*[84], 2020
The presence of acute liver injury was linked with high risk of COVID-19 morbidities and admission to an ICU.	United States	Hajifathalian *et al*[85], 2020
Serum liver enzymes were increased in from 14% to 53% of hospitalized COVID-19 patients.	United States	Fix *et al*[68], 2020
Increased bilirubin level was seen in 16.7% and increased ALT and AST were seen in 15% of COVID-19 patients.	United States	Sultan *et al*[86], 2020

ALP: Alkaline phosphatase; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; COVID-19: Coronavirus disease 2019; GGT: Gamma-glutamyl transferase; GI: Gastrointestinal; ICU: Intensive care unit. LDH: Lactate dehydrogenase; TBiL: Total bilirubin.

prevalence of liver injury compared with patients with no gastrointestinal symptoms. Correspondingly, the prevalence of chronic liver disease (CLD) was high in patients with gastrointestinal symptoms of COVID-19[18].

Liver cancer is the fourth most common cause of cancer-associated death worldwide[19]. The most common type is hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), and patients with HCC have underlying CLD, which includes alcoholic liver injury, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), and chronic hepatitis B or C virus infection[19]. It has been reported that cancer patients are at high risk of COVID-19. A study of three hospitals in Wuhan reported 1276 confirmed cases of COVID-19, among which 28 patients had different types of cancer and two of them had HCC[20]. NAFLD, also called metabolic associated fatty liver disease (MAFLD), is highly prevalent globally[21]. A study reported that patients with NAFLD had increased ALT levels following COVID-19 infection[22]. A study from China showed that patients with NAFLD had an increased risk of COVID-19 compared with patients without it[23]. However, more studies are required to understand the mechanism of liver injury caused by NAFLD and COVID-19. It has been observed that use of immunosuppressant drugs in post liver transplant patients more prone them to SARS-CoV-2 infection. Additionally, the use of these drugs were found to enhance the cytokine storm in COVID-19 patients[18,24].

COVID-19-associated liver injury is manifested by entry of SARS-CoV-2 into the liver that can progress during COVID-19 treatment in patients with or without pre-existing liver disease[25]. SARS-CoV-2-related liver injury can occur by multiple factors, including direct cytopathic effect of the virus on cholangiocytes/hepatocytes, immune-mediated damage, hypoxia[19], sepsis[26], and drugs (*e.g.*, acetaminophen, ritonavir/lopinavir, interferon, Chinese herbs, and antibacterial agents) used in treating COVID-19[27]. However, there is no proof that patients with chronic hepatitis are at risk of COVID-19 unless other comorbidities (*e.g.*, cardiovascular disease, diabetes, and hypertension) that can increase the risk of liver disease are present[26]. The angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 (ACE2) receptor is associated with entry of SARS-CoV-2 and is highly expressed (about 80%) in alveolar cells of the lungs[28], the gut, and the kidneys[29]. The expression of ACE2 receptor has also been observed in myocardial cells, nephron proximal tubule cells, absorptive enterocytes of the ileum and colon, bladder urothelial cells; and the oral, nasal and nasopharyngeal mucosal epithelia [30]. It has been reported that ACE2 cell surface receptors are highly expressed in cholangiocytes and hepatocytes, which indicates tropism of SARS-CoV-2 in the liver[31].

COVID-19-ASSOCIATED LIVER INJURY AND ITS CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS IN A GLOBAL SCENARIO

Abnormal levels of liver injury markers such as AST and ALT or abnormal liver function tests (LFTs) in COVID-19 patients place an additional disease burden on clinicians as well as to scientists in terms of treatment regimens and defining the association of COVID-19-linked hepatic diseases. The data that document liver impairment in COVID-19 patients reveal variable levels of liver injury markers across the globe, as shown in Figure 1[32-36]. In this context, the preliminary data were reported by Cai *et al*[32] from Shenzhen, China from January 11 to February 21, 2020 and followed-up to March 7, 2020. The data in the report was from a local hospital that found 318 of 417 COVID-19 patients (76.3%) with abnormal LFT values and 90 of 417 (21.5%) with liver injury during hospitalization. The incidence of liver injuries in Asia was further evaluated by Vespa *et al*[34] in a cohort of 292 COVID-19 patients until March 30, 2020. Compared with Cai *et al*[32], a cholestatic pattern of liver injury with an increased level of alkaline phosphatase (ALP) > 150 U/L was observed in 9.6% of the selected population. Another study of cholestatic liver injury conducted from January 20 to 31, 2020 at the Shanghai Public Health Clinical Center reported abnormal liver functions as increased levels of ALT and AST, gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT), ALP, and total bilirubin[37]. Thus, the documented reports describe data related to predictive markers of COVID-19 and associated liver injury, but the underlying causes of liver injury associated with worse outcomes are still elusive.

The clinical significance of COVID-19-associated liver disease needs to be described. Some studies have addressed the clinical challenges. Of relevance is a report by Vespa *et al*[34] of an increase in ALP values because of SARS-CoV-2 liver tropism *via* the ACE2 receptor on hepatocytes and cholangiocytes. Furthermore, they correlated the ALP elevation as a marker of patient frailty or as representing an increased systemic inflammatory response to SARS-CoV-2 infection[34]. The prevalence of altered liver injury markers is highly associated with drug-induced liver injury (DILI) during the COVID-19 pandemic. Several studies[32,38-40] have reported potential harms related to pharmacotherapy with lopinavir/ritonavir in COVID-19 patients and the vulnerability of patients in developing severe pneumonia *via* increased LFTs. Moreover, the pathological characteristics of liver injury *via* autopsy analysis of COVID-19 patients provides evidence in support of DILI. A study revealed moderate microvesicular steatosis with mild hepatic inflammation, indicating the possibility of hepatic injury. However, this pattern of histological injury could be correlated with either DILI or SARS-CoV-2 infection[41].

Several risk factors can be linked to the incidence of COVID-19-associated liver injury. A retrospective study in a French population found a marked prevalence of obesity in confirmed COVID-19 patients. The study included 340 COVID-19 patients, 230 (68%) with noncritical COVID-19 and 110 (32%) with critical COVID-19. It was found that 85 of 340 patients with severe COVID-19 (25%) were obese compared with 15.3% of the general French population. Following standardization by age and sex, the prevalence rates of obesity were 1.35% and 1.89% times higher in patients with severe COVID-19 and in those admitted to intensive care units, respectively, than in the general French population[42]. Likewise, Zheng *et al*[43] reported the key association of obesity with the severity of COVID-19 in MAFLD patients, which provides a rationale for the likelihood of the importance of obesity-related comorbidities of liver diseases[44,45].

PRE-EXISTING LIVER DISEASE AND COVID-19: AN INTERLINKED SETUP AND ITS RELATED CONSEQUENCES

CLDs are an existing threat that accounts for the leading causes of liver-related mortality worldwide[46-48]. The major CLDs, including hepatitis B virus or C virus infection, alcohol-induced liver damage (ALD), and NAFLD, lead to prolonged liver damage and increased incidence of CLD-associated cancers, particularly, HCC[49,50]. Underlying liver diseases were one of the crucial causative factors in the previous SARS outbreak, with high mortality rates in adults and elders[51]. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recently included liver diseases as a comorbidity and predisposing factor for contracting SARS-CoV-2 infection. Moreover, the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases (AASLD) endorses COVID-19 testing on a priority basis for patients who manifest symptoms of liver disease[52]. The COVID-19

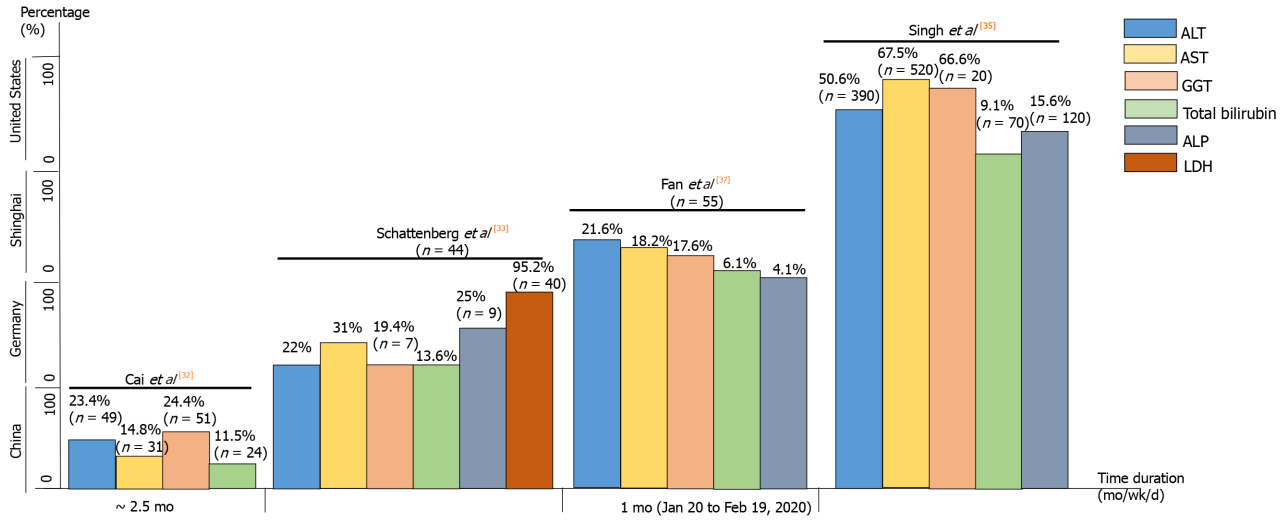


Figure 1 Overview of a global perspective related to incidence of coronavirus disease 2019-associated alterations in liver function tests.
The figure presents only data published in peer-reviewed journals. ALP: Alkaline phosphatase; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; GGT: Gamma-glutamyl transferase; LDH: Lactate dehydrogenase.

pandemic together with the global prevailing menace of CLD further complicates the care of pre-existing liver disease patients as a result of failure of screening, and follow-up. Therefore, the intricate link between pre-existing liver disease and COVID-19 requires additional study and specific disease management. It has to be expected that patients with underlying liver diseases are more vulnerable to exacerbating COVID-19-related effects and vice versa[53] that may account for the high morbidity and mortality rates in the current COVID-19 pandemic.

Relevant to pre-existing liver diseases, alcohol use disorder or ALD is the CLD with the highest hospitalization burden and has seen a more than 2-fold increase in China. The effect is likely to be repeated in the United States, with 12.7% estimated hospitalization rate associated with COVID-19. A gradual increase in the incidence of ALD was accompanied by an increase in patients indicated for liver transplantation prior to COVID-19 pandemic. The direct clinical implications of COVID-19 on ALD are still unknown, but it can be suspected that SARS-CoV-2 infection can serve as a major host-compromising factor with underlying ALD and subsequently results in acute-on-chronic liver failure. The high proportion of ALD among CLD patients is reflected in the number of patients with decompensated ALD during COVID-19 pandemic[52].

Growing evidence of COVID-19-related liver disease comorbidities suggests that MAFLD patients are at higher risk of COVID-19 disease progression[43,54,55]. A retrospective study conducted by Fondevila *et al*[56] described a mechanistic approach in the context of a higher risk of SARS-CoV-2 infection in obese patients. They assessed the hepatic mRNA expression of SARS-CoV-2 cell entry molecules, ACE2 and the cellular transmembrane protease serine 2 (*TMPRSS2*) in obese patients with NAFLD and/or diabetes mellitus type-2. Based on liver mRNA expression of both ACE2 and *TMPRSS2* in obese patients, the results revealed that SARS-CoV-2 entry factors are differently affected in diabetes and NAFLD. Moreover, major alterations in the expression of SARS-CoV-2 entry molecules in in men and women suggest a lower susceptibility of women to liver injury. While obese women with diabetes have unexpectedly lower levels of ACE2 and *TMPRSS2* than obese normoglycemic women, obese patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis had a higher expression of those genes, suggesting that advanced stages of NAFLD might predispose to COVID-19.

COVID-19 patients with comorbidities of advanced hepatic complications are generally at an increased risk of infection because of cirrhosis-associated immune dysfunction[57]. A retrospective study by Iavarone *et al*[58] documented a substantial 30-d mortality rate of 34% in a cohort of 50 cirrhotic patients with COVID-19, which was higher than the rate in cirrhotic patients with bacterial infections. Overall COVID-19 mortality from the medical consequences of respiratory failure was correlated with the worsening of liver dysfunction. Other categories of COVID-19 patients with hepatic diseases that are of great concern are liver transplant recipients and patients with autoimmune liver diseases receiving immunosuppressant drugs[57]. However, COVID-19-associated effects in recipients of living donor allografts are still unclear[59]. A case reported by The American Society of Transplantation and the American Society of

Transplant Surgeons described the impact of COVID-19-associated hepatitis during liver transplantation. A patient underwent ABO-incompatible living donor liver transplantation without knowing that the liver donor was infected with COVID-19 during the donation procedure. In that case, donor-derived transmission to the recipient was not identified, and the liver donor was found to be recovering from COVID-19 infection. Donor-derived transmission was not identified[60].

A PLAUSIBLE PATHOPHYSIOLOGICAL TRIAD OF COVID-19, HEPATOCELLULAR DAMAGE AND LIVER DISEASES

Epidemiological studies have described liver dysfunction and the effects of SARS-CoV-2 infection on the liver cells in COVID-19 patients by elevated levels of liver injury markers such as ALT, AST, and bilirubin[32,33,57,61,62]. It has been stated previously that the SARS-CoV and MERS-CoV viruses primarily affect the upper respiratory tract but also affect the liver[62,63]. Despite the immediate and direct action of SARS-CoV-2 *via* potential targets on the epithelial cells of lung alveoli as well as the respiratory tract, emerging evidence suggests that the high expression of ACE2 receptors in the liver renders it susceptible to the pathogenicity of SARS-CoV-2[36,64]. Pathological examination of COVID-19 patients has confirmed cytopathic injury in the lungs[41] and has recently confirmed SARS-CoV-2 infection as an etiology of liver disease. The proposed mechanisms associated with COVID-19-induced liver injury include direct viral insult-linked hepatic derangements, cytokine storm-prompted liver injury, and ischemia related to COVID-19-induced hypoxia as shown in Figure 2[52,65-68].

Liver impairment in COVID-19 might be directly correlated with SARS-CoV-2 infection of liver cells. Approximately 2%-10% COVID-19 patients with diarrhea have confirmed SARS-CoV-2 RNA in stool and blood samples, which implies the possibility of viral exposure in the liver. The affinity of SARS-CoV-2 and SARS-CoV for the ACE2 receptor indicates respective target sites, mainly the upper respiratory tract, lung tissue, and cholangiocytes of the liver, where the virus replicates and manifests COVID-19 associated symptoms[61]. In that context, Zhao *et al*[69] studied a SARS-CoV-2 infection model in human liver ductal organoids. They reported genomic evidence that SARS-CoV-2 virus infection resulted in dysregulation of barrier and bile-acid transporting functions of the cholangiocytes. The study found that altered cholangiocyte functions of could have been the result of a direct SARS-CoV-2 cytopathogenic effect on target cell that expressed ACE2 and *TMPRSS2*.

Cytokine storm is one of the hallmarks of infectious and noninfectious diseases that are capable of causing severe multiple organ injuries. Establishment of the cytokine environment is a multifactorial network that involves an immunological response to an invading antigen along with interplay of activated host immune and inflammatory cells. In line with the concept of cytokine storm in COVID-19 patients, Han *et al*[65] performed a prospective cohort study at a local hospital in Wuhan, China that enrolled 102 COVID-19 confirmed patients and 45 healthy control volunteers. They analyzed the serum profiles of inflammatory cytokines, including tumor necrosis factor-, interferon-, interleukin (IL)-2, IL-4, IL-6, IL-10, and C-reactive protein (CRP) by immunoassays. Significant increases in the levels of the inflammatory markers and CRP were seen in COVID-19 patients compared with the healthy volunteers. Moreover, the levels of IL-6 and IL-10 were significantly higher in critical than severe or moderate COVID-19 patients, suggesting that increased IL-6 and IL-10 may allow rapid diagnosis of patients with increased risk of lethal disease. Furthermore, Wang *et al*[70] reported COVID-19-associated conspicuous cytopathy. The severity of SARS-CoV-2 infection is associated with disturbed levels of liver enzymes, increased alveolar-arterial oxygen gradient and GGT level, and decreased albumin and circulating $CD4^+$ T cells and B lymphocytes. The predominant histological features of COVID-19 liver infection are substantial apoptosis and binuclear hepatocytes[70].

Hepatic dysfunction in severe COVID-19 is accompanied by aberrant activation of the coagulative and fibrinolytic pathways[71], moderately decreased platelet counts, increased neutrophil counts and neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratios, and high ferritin levels. Such laboratory findings are perceived as nonspecific inflammatory markers, but the altered levels can coincide with a failure of innate immune regulation during progression of severe COVID-19. Indeed, alteration of immune balance activates coagulation and NETosis, and subsequently affects systemic iron metabolism secondary to macrophage activation[38].

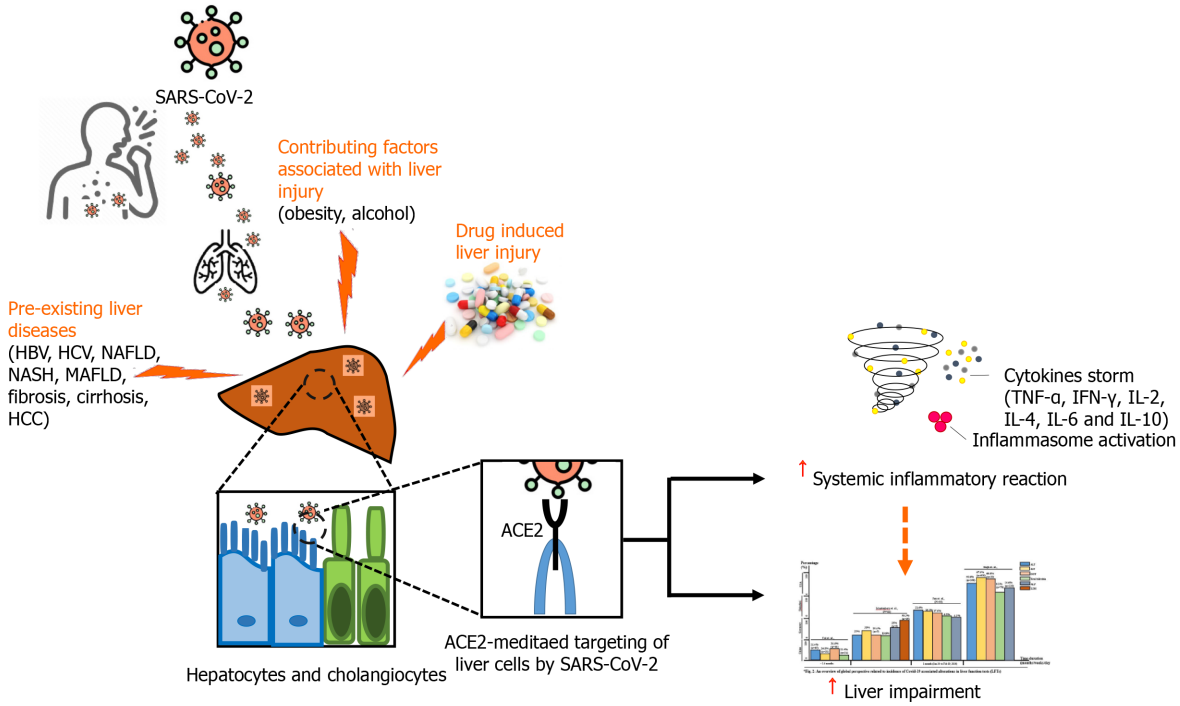


Figure 2 Severe acute respiratory syndrome-coronavirus type 2-associated pathogenesis and immunological response in the liver. ACE2: Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; IFN: Interferon; IL: Interleukin.; MAFLD: Metabolic associated fatty liver disease; NAFLD: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; NASH: Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis; SARS-CoV-2: Severe acute respiratory syndrome-coronavirus type 2; TNF: Tumor necrosis factor.

DIAGNOSTIC APPROACHES FOR COVID-19

SARS-CoV-2 infection is confirmed by serologic tests that measure the antibody response or antibody titer in the patient. In COVID-19 patients, antibodies are produced in the days to weeks after SARS-CoV-2 infection. Thus, the presence of antibodies indicates that a person was infected with SARS-CoV-2, irrespective of whether the infection caused severe or mild disease or even an asymptomatic infection. Surveillance of antibody seropositivity allows inferences to be made about the extent of infection and the cumulative incidence of infection in the population. Serologic Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays can be used for COVID-19 serosurveillance and to determine the extent of infection in the population. A confirmed case of SARS-CoV-2 infection is declared by a positive result from nasal and pharyngeal swab specimens by high-throughput sequencing or real-time reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR)[17]. Molecular testing (RT-PCR) confirms infection, often in patients with severe disease, as they are individuals who seek and require health care. A percentage of patients with mild or asymptomatic infections who do not require medical attention may not be tested, and as a result, the full spectrum of the disease will not be known[72]. SARS-CoV-2 infection is associated with epidemiological characteristics, clinical signs, and symptoms of COVID-19 that can be accessed from electronic medical records and laboratory findings. Radiological assessments of COVID-19 patients include chest X-rays or computed tomography. Whereas, laboratory assessments that help to indicate the prognosis of COVID-19 include complete blood counts, blood chemistry, coagulation tests, assays of liver and renal function markers, electrolytes, CRP, procalcitonin, lactate dehydrogenase, and creatine kinase[17].

RECOMMENDATIONS OF THERAPEUTICS FOR COVID-19: VACCINES, LABEL AND OFF-LABEL MEDICATIONS FOR PATIENT CARE

The COVID-19 pandemic has prompted the scientific community and clinicians to develop COVID-19-related therapeutics and vaccines to mitigate as well as control the pathogenicity of SARS-CoV-2. Previous investigations on genomic sequencing of

SARS-CoV and MERS have contributed to vaccination strategies in developing current vaccines against SARS-CoV-2[73]. The characteristics of vaccines in clinical testing are based upon inactivated or live-attenuated viruses, protein subunits, virus-like particles, replicating and nonreplicating viral vectors, and DNA and RNA that may provoke protective immunity to SARS-CoV-2 infection[74,75]. Since July 2, 2020, the global landscape of SARS-CoV-2 vaccine development reported 163 vaccine candidates, 135 of the 163 are in preclinical or exploratory stages of development. Currently, mRNA-1273 (Moderna), Ad5-nCoV (CanSino Biologicals), INO-4800 (Inovio, Inc.), LV-SMENP-DC, a Pathogen-specific aAPC (ShinzenGeno-Immune Medical Institute), ChAdOx1 (Oxford University) BioNtech (Pfizer), Sputnik V (Gamaleya, Russia), and Sinovac (China) have been approved by the WHO under emergency use authorization[76]. India has started mass vaccination with its locally produced Covaxin vaccine. A prolonged time period for approval of vaccines is needed for validation of efficacy and adverse effects in target populations before post-market surveillance. However, adverse reactions to vaccines including fatigue, chills, aches, skin rashes, muscle pain, fever, and joint pain could be a barrier in the global rollout of COVID-19 vaccines[77]. In April, 2020, the Access to COVID-19 Tools accelerator was launched by the WHO and its partners to cooperate in fighting against the COVID-19 pandemic. Moreover, a global collaboration aims to accelerate development, production, and equitable access to COVID-19 tests, treatments, and vaccines among countries, particularly low-to-middle income countries (SAGE; http://www.who.int/).

In terms of therapeutics, COVID-19 medications fall into two categories: Those that target the viral replication cycle and those that aim to control the symptoms of the disease. The aminoquinolines chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine are polymerase inhibitors classically used as antimalarial medications. In malaria, it inhibits heme polymerase, causing the accumulation of toxic heme in the parasite that leads to its death. In COVID-19, it is thought that the drugs keep the virus out of host cells by blocking glycosylation of host receptors and blocking the production of viral proteins by inhibiting endosomal acidification. The WHO recommends the off-label use of hydroxychloroquine or chloroquine and lopinavir/ritonavir for treatment of COVID-19 with any disease severity and any duration of symptoms. Remdesivir and systemic corticosteroids are potential candidates for conditional recommendation of use in hospitalized COVID-19 patients for usual care regardless of disease severity (WHO/2019-nCoV/therapeutics/2020.1). The WHO considers off-label use of medication as country-specific. In many countries, doctors are giving COVID-19 patients medicines that have not been approved for this disease (MEURI; http://www.who.int/). Thus, COVID-19 patients have received off-label and compassionate-use therapies, such as interferon- combined with the repurposed drug Kaletra, an approved combination of the human immunodeficiency virus protease inhibitors ritonavir and lopinavir, chloroquine, azithromycin, favipiravir, remdesivir, steroids, and anti-IL-6 inhibitors, based on either *in vitro* antiviral or anti-inflammatory properties[78]. It is unclear if COVID-19 therapeutics protect against liver injury or disease. It would be interesting to look into protective effects in future.

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF COVID-19 PATIENTS WITH PRE-EXISTING LIVER DISEASES

The WHO has approved comprehensive guidelines to strengthen the care and management of COVID-19 patients and to provide up-to-date guidance to clinicians and physicians. That report addresses the best practices to manage severe acute respiratory infection (SARI), including infection prevention and control measures and supportive care for COVID-19 patients. Furthermore, the prime considerations focus on recognizing and treating patients with SARI through appropriate diagnosis, early supportive therapy, management of acute respiratory distress and septic shock, prevention of complications, and use of specific COVID-19 treatments[79]. Indeed, patients with CLD do not appear to be over-represented in cohorts of patients with COVID-19, where they make up less than 1% of reported cases. These observations suggest that patients with CLD may have a decreased risk of contracting severe SARS-CoV-2. However, the risk of infection and/or the risk of a severe course of COVID-19 may be different depending on the nature of the CLD and the presence or absence of advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis. In that context, the European Association for the Study of the Liver, European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases and AASLD provided comprehensive guidance for physicians and clinicians for the care of

patients with CLD during the early stages of the COVID-19 pandemic[68,80]. The salient guidelines are summarized in Table 2 for clinical relevance and management of COVID-19 and liver patients.

CONCLUSION

The chaotic conditions of the global spread of COVID-19 necessitate clinical care and management of patients with pre-existing morbidities, especially highly prevalent liver diseases in developed and developing countries to decrease the economic and health losses globally. Understanding the pathophysiological mechanisms of COVID-19 and its associated adverse effects in hepatic diseases is indispensable for the development of therapeutics and vaccines as well as mitigation of risks factors of disease. The WHO guidelines and associations for the study of liver diseases are timely and helpful in decreasing burden of disease and health education. The WHO needs to play a vital role in equitable and global availability (rollout) of COVID-19 vaccines to low-to-middle income countries to prevent COVID-19 pandemic and associated comorbidities.

Table 2 Summary of specific European Association for the Study of the Liver, European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases and American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases guidelines and recommendations for the clinical care and management of patients with liver diseases during coronavirus disease 2019 pandemic

	Hospitalization and severe COVID-19	Alterations to standard treatment strategies		Progression of liver disease
	Early administration, laboratory findings and risk of SARS-CoV-2 infection	Treatment of higher risk groups	Resumption of targeted treatment and surveillance	Patient education and intensive lifestyle advice
NAFLD	High prevalence risk of SARS-CoV-2 infection in NAFLD patients with COVID-19 suggest an early admission to the hospital	No side effects related to ACE inhibitors or AR blockers to date, thus, arterial hypertension treatment should continue in accordance to prescribed guidelines	Not well known	Intensive lifestyle interventions including nutritional guidance, weight loss and diabetes management may prevent the risk of severe COVID-19 complications
Chronic Viral Hepatitis	Patients on chronic HBV or HCV medications with poor compliance should observed treatment protocols, directly	(1) In HBV and COVID-19 patients, an alternative agent should be considered rather than interferon-α therapy; (2) COVID-19 patients with high risk of severe acute HCV should consider for an appropriate antiviral therapy on case-by-case basis under the full consultation; and (3) COVID-19 patients with resolved HBV infection, receiving corticosteroids, tocilizumab, or other immunosuppressant agents should be considered for appropriate antiviral therapy to prevent viral reactivation under full consultation	(1) Without COVID-19, the patients should continue the HBV or HCV medications in accordance to general guidelines; and (2) in COVID-19 patients, initiation of HBV or HCV medication should be deferred until full recovery from COVID-19 or on case-by-case basis under the full consultation	Use of telemedicine for patients of on-going chronic HBV or HCV treatment without COVID-19
Autoimmune hepatitis	(1) Immunocompromised patients on corticosteroid treatment during COVID-19 requires respiratory support; And (2) patients on respiratory support may be considered for addition of, or conversion to, dexamethasone treatment	(1) Patients on high doses of corticosteroid may show more susceptibility to SARS-CoV-2 infection or severe COVID-19; (2) Low doses may be considered under special circumstances (*e.g.*, drug-induced lymphopenia, or bacterial/fungal superinfection with severe COVID-19) under consultation with specialist; (3) or may consider budesonide as an alternative first line agent in patient without cirrhosis to induce remission who have a flare of autoimmune hepatitis	Immunocompromised patients with COVID-19 may be considered for dosing of corticosteroid, sufficient for adrenal insufficiency	All patients should receive vaccination of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and influenza
Alcohol-related liver hepatitis	Alcohol-induced severe hepatitis patients on corticosteroid treatment with COVID-19 require respiratory support	Not well known	Not well known	Increased probability of higher alcohol consumption during social distancing, so, preemptive strategies including patient outreach and telephone alcohol liaison, should be considered
Cirrhosis	(1) Cirrhotic patients with COVID-19 should be considered for early hospitalization; and (2) to avoid admission and to prevent decompensation, guidelines on prophylaxis of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, gastrointestinal hemorrhage and hepatic encephalopathy should be followed	Vasoconstriction therapy should be considered with great caution for critically ill cirrhotic patients with COVID-19	Cirrhotic patients are vulnerable to both SARS-CoV-2 infection and altered standards of patient care during pandemic. Thus, the best efforts should be made for care of cirrhotic patients according to general guidelines	All patients should receive vaccination of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and influenza
Hepatocellular carcinoma	Specific risk of HCC patients with COVID-19 remains undefined	In COVID-19 patients, initiation of HBV or HCV medication should be deferred until full recovery from COVID-19 or on case-by-case basis under the full consultation	Full HCC surveillance should resume under specific circumstances	Consider virtual patient visits to discuss diagnosis and management of HCC and other liver tumors
Liver	Patients on the liver transplant	Precautions should be followed to make	Not well known	Patients should

transplant candidates	waiting list with decompensated cirrhosis are at high risk of severe COVID-19 and death following SARS-CoV-2 infection	COVID-19 free liver transplantation process		avoid attending in-person community recovery support meetings, such as Alcoholics Anonymous, and provide alternative telephone or online resources
Liver transplant recipients	Early admission should be considered for all liver transplant recipients who develop COVID-19	Drug levels of calcineurin inhibitors and mechanistic target of rapamycin inhibitors should be closely monitored on administration with COVID-19 medications, particularly hydroxychloroquine, protease inhibitors or new trial drugs for COVID-19	Reduction of immunosuppressant dosing may be considered under special circumstances (*e.g.*, drug-induced lymphopenia, or bacterial/fungal superinfection with severe COVID-19) under consultation with specialist	All patients should receive vaccination of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and influenza

ACE: Angiotensin-converting enzyme; AR: Adrenoreceptor; COVID-19: Coronavirus disease 2019; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma. HCV: Hepatitis C virus; NAFLD: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; SARS-CoV-2: Severe acute respiratory syndrome-coronavirus type 2.

REFERENCES

1 **Li H**, Liu SM, Yu XH, Tang SL, Tang CK. Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19): current status and future perspectives. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2020; **55**: 105951 [PMID: 32234466 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2020.105951]

2 **Zhu N**, Zhang D, Wang W, Li X, Yang B, Song J, Zhao X, Huang B, Shi W, Lu R, Niu P, Zhan F, Ma X, Wang D, Xu W, Wu G, Gao GF, Tan W; China Novel Coronavirus Investigating and Research Team. A Novel Coronavirus from Patients with Pneumonia in China, 2019. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **382**: 727-733 [PMID: 31978945 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa2001017]

3 **Malik YS**, Sircar S, Bhat S, Sharun K, Dhama K, Dadar M, Tiwari R, Chaicumpa W. Emerging novel coronavirus (2019-nCoV)-current scenario, evolutionary perspective based on genome analysis and recent developments. *Vet Q* 2020; **40**: 68-76 [PMID: 32036774 DOI: 10.1080/01652176.2020.1727993]

4 **Arshad MI**, Khan HA, Aslam B, Khan JA. Appraisal of One Health approach amid COVID-19 and zoonotic pandemics: insights for policy decision. *Trop Anim Health Prod* 2020; **53**: 11 [PMID: 33206246 DOI: 10.1007/s11250-020-02479-0]

5 **Zhang Z**, Wu Q, Zhang T. Pangolin homology associated with 2019-ncov. 2020 Preprint. Available from: bioRxiv:2020.02.19.950253 [DOI: 10.1101/2020.02.19.950253]

6 **Amirian ES**. Potential fecal transmission of SARS-CoV-2: Current evidence and implications for public health. *Int J Infect Dis* 2020; **95**: 363-370 [PMID: 32335340 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijid.2020.04.057]

7 **Lee N**, Hui D, Wu A, Chan P, Cameron P, Joynt GM, Ahuja A, Yung MY, Leung CB, To KF, Lui SF, Szeto CC, Chung S, Sung JJ. A major outbreak of severe acute respiratory syndrome in Hong Kong. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 1986-1994 [PMID: 12682352 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa030685]

8 **Patel KP**, Vunnam SR, Patel PA, Krill KL, Korbitz PM, Gallagher JP, Suh JE, Vunnam RR. Transmission of SARS-CoV-2: an update of current literature. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 2020; **39**: 2005-2011 [PMID: 32638221 DOI: 10.1007/s10096-020-03961-1]

9 **Li D**, Jin M, Bao P, Zhao W, Zhang S. Clinical Characteristics and Results of Semen Tests Among Men With Coronavirus Disease 2019. *JAMA Netw Open* 2020; **3**: e208292 [PMID: 32379329 DOI: 10.1001/jamanetworkopen.2020.8292]

10 **Seah IYJ**, Anderson DE, Kang AEZ, Wang L, Rao P, Young BE, Lye DC, Agrawal R. Assessing Viral Shedding and Infectivity of Tears in Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) Patients. *Ophthalmology* 2020; **127**: 977-979 [PMID: 32291098 DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2020.03.026]

11 **Wong YJ**, Tan M, Zheng Q, Li JW, Kumar R, Fock KM, Teo EK, Ang TL. A systematic review and meta-analysis of the COVID-19 associated liver injury. *Ann Hepatol* 2020; **19**: 627-634 [PMID: 32882393 DOI: 10.1016/j.aohep.2020.08.064]

12 **World Health Organization**. Clinical management of severe acute respiratory infection (SARI) when COVID-19 disease is suspected. 13 March 2020. [cited January 2, 2021]. In: World Health Organization [Internet]. Available from: https://www.who.int/docs/default-source/coronaviruse/clinical-management-of-novel-cov.pdf?sfvrsn=bc7da517_2

13 **Cipriano M**, Ruberti E, Giacalone A. Gastrointestinal Infection Could Be New Focus for Coronavirus Diagnosis. *Cureus* 2020; **12**: e7422 [PMID: 32351807 DOI: 10.7759/cureus.7422]

14 **Gupta A**, Madhavan MV, Sehgal K, Nair N, Mahajan S, Sehrawat TS, Bikdeli B, Ahluwalia N, Ausiello JC, Wan EY, Freedberg DE, Kirtane AJ, Parikh SA, Maurer MS, Nordvig AS, Accili D, Bathon JM, Mohan S, Bauer KA, Leon MB, Krumholz HM, Uriel N, Mehra MR, Elkind MSV, Stone GW, Schwartz A, Ho DD, Bilezikian JP, Landry DW. Extrapulmonary manifestations of COVID-19. *Nat Med* 2020; **26**: 1017-1032 [PMID: 32651579 DOI: 10.1038/s41591-020-0968-3]

15 **Shao J**, Liang Y, Li Y, Ding R, Zhu M, You W, Wang Z, Huang B, Wu M, Zhang T, Li K, Wu W, Wu L, Wang Q, Xia X, Wang S, Lu L. Implications of liver injury in risk-stratification and management of patients with COVID-19. *Hepatol Int* 2021; **15**: 202-212 [PMID: 33548030 DOI:

10.1007/s12072-020-10123-0]
16 **Xu L**, Liu J, Lu M, Yang D, Zheng X. Liver injury during highly pathogenic human coronavirus infections. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 998-1004 [PMID: 32170806 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14435]
17 **Wei Y**, Lu Y, Xia L, Yuan X, Li G, Li X, Liu L, Liu W, Zhou P, Wang CY, Zhang H. Analysis of 2019 novel coronavirus infection and clinical characteristics of outpatients: An epidemiological study from a fever clinic in Wuhan, China. *J Med Virol* 2020; **92**: 2758-2767 [PMID: 32544281 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.26175]
18 **Perisetti A**, Gajendran M, Mann R, Elhanafi S, Goyal H. COVID-19 extrapulmonary illness - special gastrointestinal and hepatic considerations. *Dis Mon* 2020; **66**: 101064 [PMID: 32807535 DOI: 10.1016/j.disamonth.2020.101064]
19 **Chan SL**, Kudo M. Impacts of COVID-19 on Liver Cancers: During and after the Pandemic. *Liver Cancer* 2020; **9**: 491-502 [PMID: 33078127 DOI: 10.1159/000510765]
20 **Kudo M**, Kurosaki M, Ikeda M, Aikata H, Hiraoka A, Torimura T, Sakamoto N. Treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma during the COVID-19 outbreak: The Working Group report of JAMTT-HCC. *Hepatol Res* 2020; **50**: 1004-1014 [PMID: 32583525 DOI: 10.1111/hepr.13541]
21 **Younossi ZM**, Koenig AB, Abdelatif D, Fazel Y, Henry L, Wymer M. Global epidemiology of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease-Meta-analytic assessment of prevalence, incidence, and outcomes. *Hepatology* 2016; **64**: 73-84 [PMID: 26707365 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28431]
22 **Huang R**, Zhu L, Wang J, Xue L, Liu L, Yan X, Huang S, Li Y, Zhang B, Xu T, Li C, Ji F, Ming F, Zhao Y, Cheng J, Wang Y, Zhao H, Hong S, Chen K, Zhao XA, Zou L, Sang D, Shao H, Guan X, Chen X, Chen Y, Wei J, Zhu C, Wu C. Clinical features of COVID-19 patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Hepatol Commun* 2020 [PMID: 32838108 DOI: 10.1002/hep4.1592]
23 **Portincasa P**, Krawczyk M, Smyk W, Lammert F, Di Ciaula A. COVID-19 and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: Two intersecting pandemics. *Eur J Clin Invest* 2020; **50**: e13338 [PMID: 32589264 DOI: 10.1111/eci.13338]
24 **Liu H**, He X, Wang Y, Zhou S, Zhang D, Zhu J, He Q, Zhu Z, Li G, Sun L, Wang J, Cheng G, Liu Z, Lau G. Management of COVID-19 in patients after liver transplantation: Beijing working party for liver transplantation. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 432-436 [PMID: 32277387 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10043-z]
25 **Sun J**, Aghemo A, Forner A, Valenti L. COVID-19 and liver disease. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 1278-1281 [PMID: 32251539 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14470]
26 **Zhou F**, Yu T, Du R, Fan G, Liu Y, Liu Z, Xiang J, Wang Y, Song B, Gu X, Guan L, Wei Y, Li H, Wu X, Xu J, Tu S, Zhang Y, Chen H, Cao B. Clinical course and risk factors for mortality of adult inpatients with COVID-19 in Wuhan, China: a retrospective cohort study. *Lancet* 2020; **395**: 1054-1062 [PMID: 32171076 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)30566-3]
27 **Olry A**, Meunier L, Délire B, Larrey D, Horsmans Y, Le Louët H. Drug-Induced Liver Injury and COVID-19 Infection: The Rules Remain the Same. *Drug Saf* 2020; **43**: 615-617 [PMID: 32514859 DOI: 10.1007/s40264-020-00954-z]
28 **Li W**, Moore MJ, Vasilieva N, Sui J, Wong SK, Berne MA, Somasundaran M, Sullivan JL, Luzuriaga K, Greenough TC, Choe H, Farzan M. Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 is a functional receptor for the SARS coronavirus. *Nature* 2003; **426**: 450-454 [PMID: 14647384 DOI: 10.1038/nature02145]
29 **Perlot T**, Penninger JM. ACE2 - from the renin-angiotensin system to gut microbiota and malnutrition. *Microbes Infect* 2013; **15**: 866-873 [PMID: 23962453 DOI: 10.1016/j.micinf.2013.08.003]
30 **Xu H**, Zhong L, Deng J, Peng J, Dan H, Zeng X, Li T, Chen Q. High expression of ACE2 receptor of 2019-nCoV on the epithelial cells of oral mucosa. *Int J Oral Sci* 2020; **12**: 8 [PMID: 32094336 DOI: 10.1038/s41368-020-0074-x]
31 **Chai X**, Hu L, Zhang Y, Han W, Lu Z, Ke A, Cai, J. Specific ACE2 expression in cholangiocytes may cause liver damage after 2019-nCoV infection. 2020 Preprint. Available from: bioRxiv: 2020.02.03.931766 [DOI: 10.1101/2020.02.03.931766]
32 **Cai Q**, Huang D, Yu H, Zhu Z, Xia Z, Su Y, Li Z, Zhou G, Gou J, Qu J, Sun Y, Liu Y, He Q, Chen J, Liu L, Xu L. COVID-19: Abnormal liver function tests. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 566-574 [PMID: 32298767 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.04.006]
33 **Schattenberg JM**, Labenz C, Wörns MA, Menge P, Weinmann A, Galle PR, Sprinzl MF. Patterns of liver injury in COVID-19 - a German case series. *United European Gastroenterol J* 2020; **8**: 814-819 [PMID: 32588791 DOI: 10.1177/2050640620931657]
34 **Vespa E**, Pugliese N, Piovani D, Capogreco A, Danese S, Aghemo A; Humanitas Covid-19 Task Force. Liver tests abnormalities in COVID-19: trick or treat? *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 1275-1276 [PMID: 32473194 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.05.033]
35 **Singh S**, Khan A. Clinical Characteristics and Outcomes of Coronavirus Disease 2019 Among Patients With Preexisting Liver Disease in the United States: A Multicenter Research Network Study. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **159**: 768-771. e3 [PMID: 32376408 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.04.064]
36 **Puelles VG**, Lütgehetmann M, Lindenmeyer MT, Sperhake JP, Wong MN, Allweiss L, Chilla S, Heinemann A, Wanner N, Liu S, Braun F, Lu S, Pfefferle S, Schröder AS, Edler C, Gross O, Glatzel M, Wichmann D, Wiech T, Kluge S, Pueschel K, Aepfelbacher M, Huber TB. Multiorgan and Renal Tropism of SARS-CoV-2. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **383**: 590-592 [PMID: 32402155 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc2011400]
37 **Fan Z**, Chen L, Li J, Cheng X, Yang J, Tian C, Zhang Y, Huang S, Liu Z, Cheng J. Clinical Features of COVID-19-Related Liver Functional Abnormality. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 1561-

1566 [PMID: 32283325 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.04.002]
38 **Bangash MN**, Patel J, Parekh D. COVID-19 and the liver: little cause for concern. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 529-530 [PMID: 32203680 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(20)30084-4]
39 **Qi X**, Liu C, Jiang Z, Gu Y, Zhang G, Shao C, Yue H, Chen Z, Ma B, Liu D, Zhang L, Wang J, Xu D, Lei J, Li X, Huang H, Wang Y, Liu H, Yang J, Pan H, Liu W, Wang W, Li F, Zou S, Zhang H, Dong J. Multicenter analysis of clinical characteristics and outcomes in patients with COVID-19 who develop liver injury. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 455-458 [PMID: 32305291 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.04.010]
40 **Meszaros M**, Meunier L, Morquin D, Klouche K, Fesler P, Malezieux E, Makinson A, Le Moing V, Reynes J, Pageaux GP. Abnormal liver tests in patients hospitalized with Coronavirus disease 2019: Should we worry? *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 1860-1864 [PMID: 32495496 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14557]
41 **Xu Z**, Shi L, Wang Y, Zhang J, Huang L, Zhang C, Liu S, Zhao P, Liu H, Zhu L, Tai Y, Bai C, Gao T, Song J, Xia P, Dong J, Zhao J, Wang FS. Pathological findings of COVID-19 associated with acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Lancet Respir Med* 2020; **8**: 420-422 [PMID: 32085846 DOI: 10.1016/S2213-2600(20)30076-X]
42 **Caussy C**, Pattou F, Wallet F, Simon C, Chalopin S, Telliam C, Mathieu D, Subtil F, Frobert E, Alligier M, Delaunay D, Vanhems P, Laville M, Jourdain M, Disse E; COVID Outcomes HCL Consortium and Lille COVID–Obesity Study Group. Prevalence of obesity among adult inpatients with COVID-19 in France. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol* 2020; **8**: 562-564 [PMID: 32437642 DOI: 10.1016/S2213-8587(20)30160-1]
43 **Zheng KI**, Gao F, Wang XB, Sun QF, Pan KH, Wang TY, Ma HL, Chen YP, Liu WY, George J, Zheng MH. Letter to the Editor: Obesity as a risk factor for greater severity of COVID-19 in patients with metabolic associated fatty liver disease. *Metabolism* 2020; **108**: 154244 [PMID: 32320741 DOI: 10.1016/j.metabol.2020.154244]
44 **Ishtiaq SM**, Rashid H, Hussain Z, Arshad MI, Khan JA. Adiponectin and PPAR: a setup for intricate crosstalk between obesity and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Rev Endocr Metab Disord* 2019; **20**: 253-261 [PMID: 31656991 DOI: 10.1007/s11154-019-09510-2]
45 **Rashid H**, Hussain Z, Ishtiaq SM, ur Rasheed M, Faisal MN, Aslam B, Muhammad F, Babar W, Abbas RZ, Khan JA. Prebiotics supplementation ameliorates high fat high sugar diet-associated oxidative stress. *Pak Vet J* 2020; **40**: 467-473 [DOI: 10.29261/pakvetj/2020.062]
46 **Gingold JA**, Zhu D, Lee DF, Kaseb A, Chen J. Genomic Profiling and Metabolic Homeostasis in Primary Liver Cancers. *Trends Mol Med* 2018; **24**: 395-411 [PMID: 29530485 DOI: 10.1016/j.molmed.2018.02.006]
47 **Villanueva A**. Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2019; **380**: 1450-1462 [PMID: 30970190 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1713263]
48 **European Association for the Study of the Liver**. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: Management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2018; **69**: 182-236 [PMID: 29628281 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2018.03.019]
49 **Riordan JD**, Feddersen CR, Tschida BR, Beckmann PJ, Keng VW, Linden MA, Amin K, Stipp CS, Largaespada DA, Dupuy AJ. Chronic liver injury alters driver mutation profiles in hepatocellular carcinoma in mice. *Hepatology* 2018; **67**: 924-939 [PMID: 28961327 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29565]
50 **Naseer A**, Hussain A, Aslam B, Muhammad F, Mohsin M, Bari MU, Sultana A, Masood A. Vitamin E and selenium attenuate hepatotoxicity, nephrotoxicity and oxidative stress induced by rifampicin in rabbits. *Pak Vet J* 2020; **3**: 277-282
51 **Peiris JS**, Chu CM, Cheng VC, Chan KS, Hung IF, Poon LL, Law KI, Tang BS, Hon TY, Chan CS, Chan KH, Ng JS, Zheng BJ, Ng WL, Lai RW, Guan Y, Yuen KY; HKU/UCH SARS Study Group. Clinical progression and viral load in a community outbreak of coronavirus-associated SARS pneumonia: a prospective study. *Lancet* 2003; **361**: 1767-1772 [PMID: 12781535 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(03)13412-5]
52 **Da BL**, Im GY, Schiano TD. Coronavirus Disease 2019 Hangover: A Rising Tide of Alcohol Use Disorder and Alcohol-Associated Liver Disease. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 1102-1108 [PMID: 32369624 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31307]
53 **Jothimani D**, Venugopal R, Abedin MF, Kaliamoorthy I, Rela M. COVID-19 and the liver. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 1231-1240 [PMID: 32553666 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.06.006]
54 **Ji D**, Qin E, Xu J, Zhang D, Cheng G, Wang Y, Lau G. Non-alcoholic fatty liver diseases in patients with COVID-19: A retrospective study. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 451-453 [PMID: 32278005 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.03.044]
55 **Zhou YJ**, Zheng KI, Wang XB, Yan HD, Sun QF, Pan KH, Wang TY, Ma HL, Chen YP, George J, Zheng MH. Younger patients with MAFLD are at increased risk of severe COVID-19 illness: A multicenter preliminary analysis. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 719-721 [PMID: 32348790 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.04.027]
56 **Fondevila MF**, Mercado-Gómez M, Rodríguez A, Gonzalez-Rellan MJ, Iruzubieta P, Valentí V, Escalada J, Schwaninger M, Prevot V, Dieguez C, Crespo J, Frühbeck G, Martinez-Chantar ML, Nogueiras R. Obese patients with NASH have increased hepatic expression of SARS-CoV-2 critical entry points. *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 469-471 [PMID: 33096086 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.09.027]
57 **Bertolini A**, van de Peppel IP, Bodewes FAJA, Moshage H, Fantin A, Farinati F, Fiorotto R, Jonker JW, Strazzabosco M, Verkade HJ, Peserico G. Abnormal Liver Function Tests in Patients With COVID-19: Relevance and Potential Pathogenesis. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 1864-1872 [PMID: 32702162 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31480]

58 **Iavarone M**, D'Ambrosio R, Soria A, Triolo M, Pugliese N, Del Poggio P, Perricone G, Massironi S, Spinetti A, Buscarini E, Viganò M, Carriero C, Fagiuoli S, Aghemo A, Belli LS, Lucà M, Pedaci M, Rimondi A, Rumi MG, Invernizzi P, Bonfanti P, Lampertico P. High rates of 30-day mortality in patients with cirrhosis and COVID-19. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 1063-1071 [PMID: 32526252 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.06.001]

59 **Di Maira T**, Berenguer M. COVID-19 and liver transplantation. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **17**: 526-528 [PMID: 32651555 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-020-0347-z]

60 **Hong HL**, Kim SH, Choi DL, Kwon HH. A case of coronavirus disease 2019-infected liver transplant donor. *Am J Transplant* 2020; **20**: 2938-2941 [PMID: 32400013 DOI: 10.1111/ajt.15997]

61 **Zhang C**, Shi L, Wang FS. Liver injury in COVID-19: management and challenges. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 428-430 [PMID: 32145190 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(20)30057-1]

62 **Wu J**, Song S, Cao HC, Li LJ. Liver diseases in COVID-19: Etiology, treatment and prognosis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 2286-2293 [PMID: 32476793 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i19.2286]

63 **Kumar-M P**, Mishra S, Jha DK, Shukla J, Choudhury A, Mohindra R, Mandavdhare HS, Dutta U, Sharma V. Coronavirus disease (COVID-19) and the liver: a comprehensive systematic review and meta-analysis. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 711-722 [PMID: 32623633 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10071-9]

64 **Warner FJ**, Rajapaksha H, Shackel N, Herath CB. ACE2: from protection of liver disease to propagation of COVID-19. *Clin Sci (Lond)* 2020; **134**: 3137-3158 [PMID: 33284956 DOI: 10.1042/CS20201268]

65 **Han H**, Ma Q, Li C, Liu R, Zhao L, Wang W, Zhang P, Liu X, Gao G, Liu F, Jiang Y, Cheng X, Zhu C, Xia Y. Profiling serum cytokines in COVID-19 patients reveals IL-6 and IL-10 are disease severity predictors. *Emerg Microbes Infect* 2020; **9**: 1123-1130 [PMID: 32475230 DOI: 10.1080/22221751.2020.1770129]

66 **Patra T**, Meyer K, Geerling L, Isbell TS, Hoft DF, Brien J, Pinto AK, Ray RB, Ray R. SARS-CoV-2 spike protein promotes IL-6 trans-signaling by activation of angiotensin II receptor signaling in epithelial cells. *PLoS Pathog* 2020; **16**: e1009128 [PMID: 33284859 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1009128]

67 **Feng G**, Zheng KI, Yan QQ, Rios RS, Targher G, Byrne CD, Poucke SV, Liu WY, Zheng MH. COVID-19 and Liver Dysfunction: Current Insights and Emergent Therapeutic Strategies. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2020; **8**: 18-24 [PMID: 32274342 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2020.00018]

68 **Fix OK**, Hameed B, Fontana RJ, Kwok RM, McGuire BM, Mulligan DC, Pratt DS, Russo MW, Schilsky ML, Verna EC, Loomba R, Cohen DE, Bezerra JA, Reddy KR, Chung RT. Clinical Best Practice Advice for Hepatology and Liver Transplant Providers During the COVID-19 Pandemic: AASLD Expert Panel Consensus Statement. *Hepatology* 2020; **72**: 287-304 [PMID: 32298473 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31281]

69 **Zhao B**, Ni C, Gao R, Wang Y, Yang L, Wei J, Lv T, Liang J, Zhang Q, Xu W, Xie Y, Wang X, Yuan Z, Zhang R, Lin X. Recapitulation of SARS-CoV-2 infection and cholangiocyte damage with human liver ductal organoids. *Protein Cell* 2020; **11**: 771-775 [PMID: 32303993 DOI: 10.1007/s13238-020-00718-6]

70 **Wang Y**, Liu S, Liu H, Li W, Lin F, Jiang L, Li X, Xu P, Zhang L, Zhao L, Cao Y, Kang J, Yang J, Li L, Liu X, Li Y, Nie R, Mu J, Lu F, Zhao S, Lu J, Zhao J. SARS-CoV-2 infection of the liver directly contributes to hepatic impairment in patients with COVID-19. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 807-816 [PMID: 32437830 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.05.002]

71 **Buonvino S**, Melino S. New Consensus pattern in Spike CoV-2: potential implications in coagulation process and cell-cell fusion. *Cell Death Discov* 2020; **6**: 134 [PMID: 33262894 DOI: 10.1038/s41420-020-00372-1]

72 **Fang B**, Meng QH. The laboratory's role in combating COVID-19. *Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci* 2020; **57**: 400-414 [PMID: 32662342 DOI: 10.1080/10408363.2020.1776675]

73 **Kaur SP**, Gupta V. COVID-19 Vaccine: A comprehensive status report. *Virus Res* 2020; **288**: 198114 [PMID: 32800805 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2020.198114]

74 **Thanh Le T**, Andreadakis Z, Kumar A, Gómez Román R, Tollefsen S, Saville M, Mayhew S. The COVID-19 vaccine development landscape. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2020; **19**: 305-306 [PMID: 32273591 DOI: 10.1038/d41573-020-00073-5]

75 **Jeyanathan M**, Afkhami S, Smaill F, Miller MS, Lichty BD, Xing Z. Immunological considerations for COVID-19 vaccine strategies. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2020; **20**: 615-632 [PMID: 32887954 DOI: 10.1038/s41577-020-00434-6]

76 **World Health Organization**. Draft landscape and tracker of COVID-19 candidate vaccines. [cited January 3, 2021]. In: World Health Organization [Internet]. Available from: https://www.who.int/publications/m/item/draft-landscape-of-covid-19-candidate-vaccines

77 **Choi KR**. A Nursing Researcher's Experience in a COVID-19 Vaccine Trial. *JAMA Intern Med* 2021; **181**: 157-158 [PMID: 33284328 DOI: 10.1001/jamainternmed.2020.7087]

78 **Romani L**, Tomino C, Puccetti P, Garaci E. Off-label therapy targeting pathogenic inflammation in COVID-19. *Cell Death Discov* 2020; **6**: 49 [PMID: 32547788 DOI: 10.1038/s41420-020-0283-2]

79 **World Health Organization**. Clinical management of severe acute respiratory infection when novel coronavirus (2019-nCoV) infection is suspected: interim guidance, 28 January 2020. [cited January 3, 2021]. In: World Health Organization [Internet]. Available from: https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/330893

80 **Boettler T**, Marjot T, Newsome PN, Mondelli MU, Maticic M, Cordero E, Jalan R, Moreau R, Cornberg M, Berg T. Impact of COVID-19 on the care of patients with liver disease: EASL-ESCMID

position paper after 6 mo of the pandemic. *JHEP Rep* 2020; **2**: 100169 [PMID: 32835190 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhepr.2020.100169]

81 **Pan L**, Mu M, Yang P, Sun Y, Wang R, Yan J, Li P, Hu B, Wang J, Hu C, Jin Y, Niu X, Ping R, Du Y, Li T, Xu G, Hu Q, Tu L. Clinical Characteristics of COVID-19 Patients With Digestive Symptoms in Hubei, China: A Descriptive, Cross-Sectional, Multicenter Study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2020; **115**: 766-773 [PMID: 32287140 DOI: 10.14309/ajg.0000000000000620]

82 **Zhang Y**, Zheng L, Liu L, Zhao M, Xiao J, Zhao Q. Liver impairment in COVID-19 patients: A retrospective analysis of 115 cases from a single centre in Wuhan city, China. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 2095-2103 [PMID: 32239796 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14455]

83 **Fu L**, Fei J, Xu S, Xiang HX, Xiang Y, Hu B, Li MD, Liu FF, Li Y, Li XY, Zhao H, Xu DX. Liver Dysfunction and Its Association with the Risk of Death in COVID-19 Patients: A Prospective Cohort Study. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2020; **8**: 246-254 [PMID: 33083246 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2020.00043]

84 **Fan H**, Cai J, Tian A, Li Y, Yuan H, Jiang Z, Yu Y, Ruan L, Hu P, Yue M, Chen N, Li J, Zhu C. Comparison of Liver Biomarkers in 288 COVID-19 Patients: A Mono-Centric Study in the Early Phase of Pandemic. *Front Med (Lausanne)* 2020; **7**: 584888 [PMID: 33521010 DOI: 10.3389/fmed.2020.584888]

85 **Hajifathalian K**, Krisko T, Mehta A, Kumar S, Schwartz R, Fortune B, Sharaiha RZ; WCM-GI research group*. Gastrointestinal and Hepatic Manifestations of 2019 Novel Coronavirus Disease in a Large Cohort of Infected Patients From New York: Clinical Implications. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **159**: 1137-1140. e2 [PMID: 32389667 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.05.010]

86 **Sultan S**, Altayar O, Siddique SM, Davitkov P, Feuerstein JD, Lim JK, Falck-Ytter Y, El-Serag HB; AGA Institute. Electronic address: ewilson@gastro.org. AGA Institute Rapid Review of the Gastrointestinal and Liver Manifestations of COVID-19, Meta-Analysis of International Data, and Recommendations for the Consultative Management of Patients with COVID-19. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **159**: 320-334. e27 [PMID: 32407808 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.05.001]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2021 April 7; 27(13): 1311-1320

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1311

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Cohort Study

Non-responsive celiac disease in children on a gluten free diet

Gopal Veeraraghavan, Amelie Therrien, Maya Degroote, Allison McKeown, Paul D Mitchell, Jocelyn A Silvester, Daniel A Leffler, Alan M Leichtner, Ciaran P Kelly, Dascha C Weir

ORCID number: Gopal Veeraraghavan 0000-0002-1230-2407; Amelie Therrien 0000-0002-6911-8598; Maya Degroote 0000-0003-1230-7037; Allison McKeown 0000-0002-4324-8124; Paul D Mitchell 0000-0001-6786-1604; Jocelyn A Silvester 0000-0002-3615-1666; Daniel A Leffler 0000-0002-0750-3386; Alan M Leichtner 0000-0003-4634-6632; Ciaran P Kelly 0000-0002-8216-1240; Dascha C Weir 0000-0002-8347-8565.

Author contributions: Veeraraghavan G, McKeown A, Degroote M, Silvester JA, Leffler DA, Leichtner AM, Kelly CP and Weir DC contributed planning and/or conducting the study; Veeraraghavan G, Therrien A, Degroote M, McKeown A, Mitchell PD, Silvester JA and Weir DC contributed collecting and/or interpreting data; Veeraraghavan G, Therrien A, Degroote M, Mitchell PD, Silvester JA, Leffler DA, Leichtner AM, Kelly CP and Weir DC contributed drafting the manuscript.

Supported by Boston Children's Hospital and the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases of the National Institutes of Health, No. P30DK034854, No. K23DK119584 and No. T32DK07760; DG Kinnear Award from the Association Quebecoise des

Gopal Veeraraghavan, Amelie Therrien, Maya Degroote, Allison McKeown, Jocelyn A Silvester, Alan M Leichtner, Dascha C Weir, Division of Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition, Boston Children's Hospital, Boston, MA 02115, United States

Gopal Veeraraghavan, Amelie Therrien, Jocelyn A Silvester, Daniel A Leffler, Ciaran P Kelly, The Celiac Center, Department of Medicine and Division of Gastroenterology, Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center, Boston, MA 02215, United States

Gopal Veeraraghavan, Amelie Therrien, Jocelyn A Silvester, Daniel A Leffler, Alan M Leichtner, Ciaran P Kelly, Dascha C Weir, Celiac Research Program, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA 02115, United States

Paul D Mitchell, Institutional Centers for Clinical and Translational Research, Boston Children's Hospital, Boston, MA 02115, United States

Daniel A Leffler, Gastrointestinal Therapeutics, Takeda Pharmaceutical International Co, Cambridge, MA 02139, United States

Corresponding author: Dascha C Weir, MD, Attending Physician, Division of Gastroen-terology, Hepatology and Nutrition, Boston Children's Hospital, 300 Longwood Ave, Boston, MA 02115, United States. dascha.weir@childrens.harvard.edu

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Non-responsive celiac disease (NRCD) is defined as the persistence of symptoms in individuals with celiac disease (CeD) despite being on a gluten-free diet (GFD). There is scant literature about NRCD in the pediatric population.

AIM

To determine the incidence, clinical characteristics and underlying causes of NRCD in children.

METHODS

Retrospective cohort study performed at Boston Children's Hospital (BCH). Children < 18 years diagnosed with CeD by positive serology and duodenal biopsies compatible with Marsh III histology between 2008 and 2012 were identified in the BCH's Celiac Disease Program database. Medical records were longitudinally reviewed from the time of diagnosis through September 2015. NRCD was defined as persistent symptoms at 6 mo after the initiation of a GFD

Gastroenterologues du Quebec; and Phase 2 Award from the Fonds de Recherche Sante Quebec.

Institutional review board statement: This study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board of Boston Children's Hospital.

Informed consent statement: Patients were not required to give informed consent to the study because this study presented no more than minimal risk to patient privacy and confidentiality.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Leffler DA is employed by Takeda Pharmaceuticals International Co. Kelly CP has acted as a scientific advisor to companies attempting to develop new diagnostic and management approaches for Celiac disease including Cour Pharma, Glutenostics, Innovate, Immunogenx and Takeda. He also acts as Principal Investigator on a research grant on Celiac disease supported by Aptalis. Silvester JA has served on an advisory board for Takeda Pharmaceuticals and has received research funding from Biomedal S.L., Cour Pharma and Glutenostics.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

STROBE statement: The authors have read the STROBE Statement-checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the STROBE Statement-checklist of items.

and causes of NRCD as well as symptom evolution were detailed. The children without symptoms at 6 mo (responders) were compared with the NRCD group. Additionally, presenting signs and symptoms at the time of diagnosis of CeD among the responders and NRCD patients were collected and compared to identify any potential predictors for NRCD at 6 mo of GFD therapy.

RESULTS

Six hundred and sixteen children were included. Ninety-one (15%) met criteria for NRCD. Most were female (77%). Abdominal pain [odds ratio (OR) 1.8 95% confidence interval (CI) 1.1-2.9], constipation (OR 3.1 95%CI 1.9-4.9) and absence of abdominal distension (OR for abdominal distension 0.4 95%CI 0.1-0.98) at diagnosis were associated with NRCD. NRCD was attributed to a wide variety of diagnoses with gluten exposure (30%) and constipation (20%) being the most common causes. Other causes for NRCD included lactose intolerance (9%), gastroesophageal reflux (8%), functional abdominal pain (7%), irritable bowel syndrome (3%), depression/anxiety (3%), eosinophilic esophagitis (2%), food allergy (1%), eating disorder (1%), gastric ulcer with *Helicobacter pylori* (1%), lymphocytic colitis (1%), aerophagia (1%) and undetermined (13%). 64% of children with NRCD improved on follow-up.

CONCLUSION

NRCD after ≥ 6 mo GFD is frequent among children, especially females, and is associated with initial presenting symptoms of constipation and/or abdominal pain. Gluten exposure is the most frequent cause.

Key Words: Celiac disease; Non-responsive celiac disease; Children; Gluten-free diet; Constipation; Abdominal pain

Core Tip: This is a retrospective chart review study of children < 18 years of age diagnosed with celiac disease (CeD) by positive serology and biopsies showing Marsh III histology to characterize non-responsive CeD (NRCD). NRCD was attributed to a wide variety of diagnoses with gluten exposure (30%) and constipation (20%) being the most common causes. Most (64%) patients improved on follow-up. Our study highlights the importance of performing a diligent search for etiologies of NRCD when there are persistent symptoms despite following a gluten-free diet and reinforces the need for close follow up in the first year of the diagnosis of CeD.

Citation: Veeraraghavan G, Therrien A, Degroote M, McKeown A, Mitchell PD, Silvester JA, Leffler DA, Leichtner AM, Kelly CP, Weir DC. Non-responsive celiac disease in children on a gluten free diet. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(13): 1311-1320
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i13/1311.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1311

INTRODUCTION

Celiac disease (CeD) is a chronic immune-mediated enteropathy precipitated by exposure to gluten in genetically predisposed individuals[1]. CeD is diagnosed based on clinical symptoms and serological markers in conjunction with specific histological changes found in the duodenum, including villous atrophy, crypt hyperplasia and intraepithelial lymphocytosis[2].

Strict elimination of gluten is currently the only effective treatment for CeD[2,3]. A gluten-free diet (GFD) leads to significant improvement in most people with CeD within weeks[4]. Failure to respond after six to twelve months of a GFD is defined as non-responsive CeD (NRCD), and may occur in both adults and children[5]. NRCD incorporates a range of specific and distinct underlying diagnoses, such as other food intolerance, small intestinal bacterial overgrowth, microscopic colitis, and irritable bowel syndrome[6,7]; nevertheless, the most common etiology of NRCD is continued

Manuscript source: Unsolicited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: United States

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): B, B, B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: December 3, 2020
Peer-review started: December 3, 2020
First decision: December 21, 2020
Revised: January 4, 2021
Accepted: February 1, 2021
Article in press: February 1, 2021
Published online: April 7, 2021

P-Reviewer: Makovicky P, Pop TL
S-Editor: Gao CC
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Ma YJ

gluten exposure[6,8]. Studies suggest that 7% to 52% of adult CeD patients may have NRCD[2,5,6]. A recent retrospective study showed that 34% of children adhering to a GFD still report at least one symptoms more than 24 mo after their diagnosis[5]; however, little is known about the spectrum and etiologies of NRCD in children.

The objective of this study was to determine the incidence, clinical characteristics and underlying causes of NRCD in children.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

In this retrospective cohort study, we used the Boston Children's Hospital (BCH) Celiac Disease Program database to identify children less than 18 years of age with an initial biopsy-confirmed CeD diagnosis at BCH between January 1, 2008 and December 31, 2012. Celiac antibodies included tissue transglutaminase (tTG) immunoglobulin (Ig) A, deamidated gliadin peptide (DGP) IgG and endomysial antibody (EMA) IgA. Included patients had Marsh III lesions, defined by increased intraepithelial lymphocytes, villous atrophy, and crypt hyperplasia[2]. Children diagnosed elsewhere and seen for a second opinion, and those who were asymptomatic at the time of diagnosis were excluded.

Data extracted from medical records included demographics, clinical presentation, serologic results, comorbidities, family history of CeD and number of dietitian visits at BCH within 120 d of CeD diagnosis. Medical records were reviewed longitudinally from the time of diagnosis through September 2015.

Adherence to the GFD was determined from review of medical records, primarily from dietician documentation/notes of their clinical assessment which included a dietary interview and is reported using a previously published assessment scale graded as follows: (1) Excellent = patient never ate gluten intentionally and/or had rare exposure, (2) Good = inadvertent exposure once per month, (3) Fair = exposure 2-3 times per month, (4) Poor = exposure 1-2 times per week, (5) Noncompliant = not on a GFD, or (6) Unable to assess GFD adherence from the medical record[9].

NRCD was defined as persistent clinical symptoms six months or more after the initiation of a GFD. Children with clinical improvement while on a GFD were considered as responders and compared with the NCRD group. This study was approved by the BCH Institutional Review Board.

Statistical analysis

Categorical data were summarized as frequency (percentage) and comparisons between responders and children with NRCD made with Fisher's exact test. Continuous data were presented as median with interquartile range (IQR) and compared across groups by Wilcoxon rank-sum test. A stepwise logistic regression model was used to investigate symptoms at the time of diagnosis that are independently associated with NRCD signs and symptoms included abdominal pain, constipation (hard or infrequent stools), nausea/vomiting, diarrhea, weight loss or poor weight gain, fatigue, short stature, gassiness, abdominal distension, loss of appetite, arthritis/arthralgia, rash, and mouth ulcers. $P < 0.20$ was required for a symptom to enter the model, and $P < 0.05$ was required for the symptom to remain in the model. All comparisons were two-sided, with statistical significance established a priori as $P < 0.05$. Data analysis was performed with SAS v9.4 (Cary, NC, United States).

RESULTS

A total of 659 children under 18 years of age were diagnosed with biopsy-confirmed CeD at BCH between January 1, 2008 and December 31, 2012 (Figure 1). All had elevated serum tTG IgA except for nine subjects. These nine were diagnosed with CeD according to the presence of other celiac serology, HLA typing compatible with CeD or response to a GFD. Forty-three who did not have symptoms at the time of the diagnosis (evaluated for CeD because of type 1 diabetes, family history of CeD or short stature) were excluded from the primary analysis. Of the remaining 616 children included, 525 (85%) subjects showed complete response as determined by resolution of clinical symptoms in the 6 (± 2) mo following the initiation of the GFD (responders). Ninety-one children (15%) met the criteria for NRCD, with persistent symptoms 6 mo after the diagnosis.

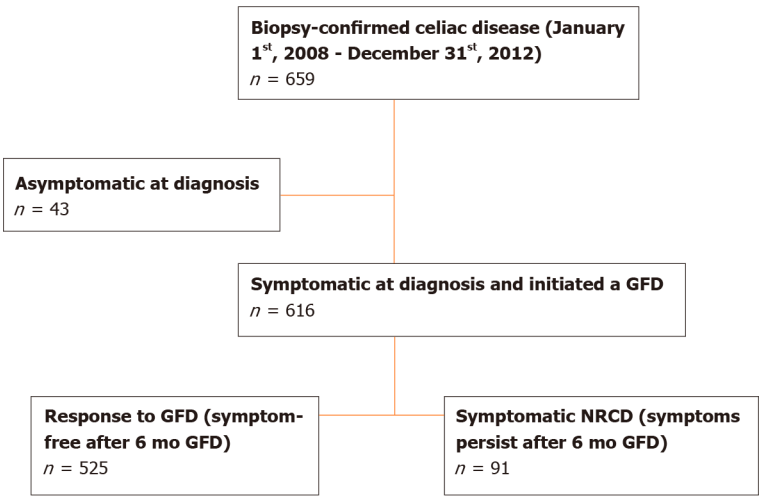


Figure 1 Patient selection flowchart. GFD: Gluten-free diet; NRCD: Non-responsive celiac disease.

Characteristics of responders (n = 525) and NRCD (n = 91) groups are shown in Table 1. Significantly more subjects with NRCD were female (77% *vs* 65%, respectively; P = 0.02). There was no difference in age at time of biopsy, and subjects of all ages were included: < 3 year (9%), 3-6 year (25%), 7-11 year (31%), and 12-17 year (35%). There was a trend towards more Hispanic patients among NRCD subjects compared to responders (5% *vs* 1%, respectively; P = 0.06). Family history of CeD (27%) was less common than family history of other autoimmune disorders (46%), but the incidence for each was similar between NRCD subjects and responders. Finally, at the time of CeD diagnosis, subjects with NRCD had lower body mass index (BMI) z-score compared to responders (median 0.00 (IQR -1.12, 0.58) *vs* 0.18 (IQR -0.48, 0.82); P = 0.02) (Table 1).

Abdominal pain was the most common presenting symptom at diagnosis and was more likely in children with NRCD compared to responders (70% *vs* 54%, P < 0.006). Constipation (hard or infrequent stools) was the second most common presenting symptom and was also more frequent with NRCD (54% *vs* 28%, P < 0.0001). Psychiatric manifestations (anxiety and restrictive eating disorder) were also more prevalent at diagnosis among children with NRCD compared to responders (Table 2).

Symptoms at the time of diagnosis that were determined by stepwise logistic regression to be independently associated with NRCD included constipation, lack of abdominal distension, and abdominal pain. The odds of NRCD were 3.1 (95% confidence interval (CI) 1.9-4.9) times higher for subjects with constipation compared to those with normal bowel movements. Likewise, absence of abdominal distension (odds ratio (OR) for abdominal distension 0.4, 95%CI 0.1-0.98) and presence of abdominal pain (OR 1.8, 95%CI 1.1-2.9) were independently associated with NRCD.

When examining serum tTG IgA antibody levels, 14 (15%) of NRCD patients had a less than 20% decrease in tTG IgA at 6 mo, 11 of whom continued to have tTG IgA levels greater than 1.5 × the upper limit of normal (ULN) at 1 year after diagnosis.

Formal evaluation and counselling by a dietitian within the first 120 d following CeD diagnosis was performed for 75 (82%) of patients with NRCD, compared to 342 (67%) of responders (P = 0.001). Additional nutrition counselling after the first 120 d occurred for 41% (n = 255) children and was more common among NRCD patients than responders (55% *vs* 39%, P < 0.006). GFD adherence was classified as excellent in 54 (66%) of symptomatic NRCD patients and poor in 12 (15%). We were unable to assess adherence to the diet in 9 patients based on medical record review. Seventeen of the 91 patients (19%) had repeat endoscopy as part of their evaluation, a median of 18.9 (IQR 9.5-25.4) months after their initial endoscopy. The majority showed normal villous architecture (82%, n = 14). Two children with persistent villous atrophy had on-going gluten exposure; a third one had follow-up biopsies only 2.8 mo after CeD diagnosis (to follow-up on coexisting eosinophilic esophagitis).

An etiology of NRCD was identified for 88/91 children. Gluten exposure was the most common cause (30%, n = 27) (Figure 2). These children had similar rates of elevated tTG IgA at 6 mo (52% *vs* 46%) and tTG IgA > 1.5 × ULN at one year (15% *vs* 11%) to the rest of the cohort.

Chronic constipation was the underlying cause of NRCD in 18 (20%) patients, and

Table 1 Characteristics of responders to the gluten-free diet and children with non-responsive celiac disease based on persistent symptoms after 6 mo on a gluten-free diet

Characteristic	Responders (*n* = 525)	NRCD (*n* = 91)	*P* value
Female sex, *n* (%)	339 (65)	70 (77)	0.02
Age at biopsy (yr), median (IQR)	9.4 (5.9, 13.4)	9.6 (5.7, 13.4)	0.73
Caucasian race[1] (%)	410/438 (92)	75/85 (91)	1.00
Hispanic[2] (%)	6/438 (1)	4/84 (5)	0.06
Medical history			
Diabetes mellitus, *n* (%)	39 (7)	3 (3)	0.18
Thyroid condition, *n* (%)	20 (4)	1 (1)	0.34
Down syndrome, *n* (%)	12 (2)	0 (0)	0.23
Family history of celiac disease, *n* (%)	144 (27)	22 (24)	0.53
Family history of other autoimmune disease[3], *n* (%)	239 (46)	43 (47)	0.73
BMI at diagnosis[4], median (IQR)	17.0 (15.6, 20.0)	16.4 (15.1, 19.3)	0.03
BMI *z*-score at diagnosis[5], median (IQR)	0.18 (-0.48, 0.82)	0.00 (-1.12, 0.58)	0.02
≥ 1 nutrition visit within first 120 d of GFD, *n* (%)	342 (65)	75 (82)	0.001
Time between diagnosis and first nutrition visit (wk), median (IQR)	4.0 (2.1, 7.0)	3.4 (2.2, 5.6)	0.36

Data unknown:
[1]*n* = 86.
[2]*n* = 84.
[4]*n* = 33.
[5]*n* = 39.
[3]Lupus, rheumatoid arthritis, type 1 diabetes, auto-immune thyroid diseases. *P* value from Fisher's exact test or Wilcoxon rank-sum test. IQR: Interquartile range; GFD: Gluten-free diet; NRCD: Non-responsive celiac disease.

was already present (*n* = 15) and treated with laxatives (*n* = 14) at the time of CeD diagnosis. Other causes for NRCD which were identified are detailed in Figure 2.

Forty-three (64%) of the 67 NRCD children with follow-up had eventual resolution of their clinical symptoms, whereas the remainder (*n* = 24, 26%) were lost to follow-up before symptoms resolved. Of the 11 patients for whom the etiology of NRCD was unclear, 4 were lost to follow-up, and 5 resolved with time. Only 2 children had persistent symptoms of undetermined etiology lasting 3 years or longer. Symptom resolution was frequent in patients with NRCD secondary to gluten exposure (*n* = 14, 67%) and constipation (*n* = 10, 71%). Those with functional abdominal pain (*n* = 6), irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) (*n* = 3), depression or anxiety (*n* = 3) fared worse. Only 1 patient in each group had resolution of symptoms at 3 years of follow-up despite treatment.

DISCUSSION

We report the incidence, etiology, and clinical characteristics of 91 children with NRCD who were diagnosed and treated at BCH between January 2008 and December 2012. The incidence of symptomatic NRCD 6 mo after initiation of a GFD was 15%. Pediatric NRCD was more prevalent in females and associated with a lower BMI *z*-score, greater abdominal pain, constipation and absence of abdominal distension at diagnosis. Etiologies of NRCD mirrored those reported in adults, with gluten exposure as the most common cause; however, there were no cases of refractory CeD.

Although definitions may vary, our results were consistent with previously published data on NRCD in adults of the same geographic region[6]. We found a lower incidence of NRCD than in a recent pediatric cohort study, in which 34% of children had at least one symptom of CeD more than 24 mo after initiating a GFD[5]. It is unclear whether the prevalence of NRCD increases with time, or if the apparently higher rate of NRCD at 24 mo reflects that the responders were lost to follow-up. Our experience

Table 2 Signs and symptoms at diagnosis of celiac disease among responders to the gluten-free diet and non-responsive celiac disease patients

	Responders (*n* = 525)	NRCD (*n* = 91)	*P* value
Abdominal pain, *n* (%)	286 (54)	64 (70)	< 0.006
Hard or infrequent stools, *n* (%)	147 (28)	49 (54)	< 0.0001
Nausea/vomiting, *n* (%)	127 (24)	26 (29)	0.43
Diarrhea, *n* (%)	133 (25)	22 (24)	0.90
Weight loss, poor weight gain, *n* (%)	126 (24)	21 (23)	0.89
Fatigue, *n* (%)	71 (14)	15 (16)	0.51
Short stature, *n* (%)	78 (15)	8 (9)	0.14
Gassiness, *n* (%)	58 (11)	9 (10)	0.86
Abdominal distention, *n* (%)	63 (12)	5 (5)	0.07
Loss of appetite, *n* (%)	53 (10)	14 (15)	0.15
Neurologic[1], *n* (%)	4 (1)	3 (3)	0.07
Psychiatric[2], *n* (%)	0 (0)	2 (2)	0.02
Arthritis, arthralgia, *n* (%)	28 (5)	9 (10)	0.10
Rash, *n* (%)	25 (5)	4 (4)	1.00
Mouth ulcers, *n* (%)	18 (3)	5 (5)	0.37
Other[3], *n* (%)	5 (1)	10 (11)	< 0.0001

[1]Neurologic symptoms include: Headache (*n* = 6), blurry vision (*n* = 1).
[2]Psychiatric symptoms include: anxiety (*n* = 1) and restrictive eating disorder (*n* = 1).
[3]Other signs and symptoms include: Fecal soiling (*n* = 2) dysphagia (*n* = 2), symptomatic anemia (*n* = 2), rectal bleeding (*n* = 3), encopresis (*n* = 2), hair loss (*n* = 2) delayed puberty (*n* = 1), easy bruising (*n* = 1). *P* value from Fisher's exact test. NRCD: Non-responsive celiac disease.

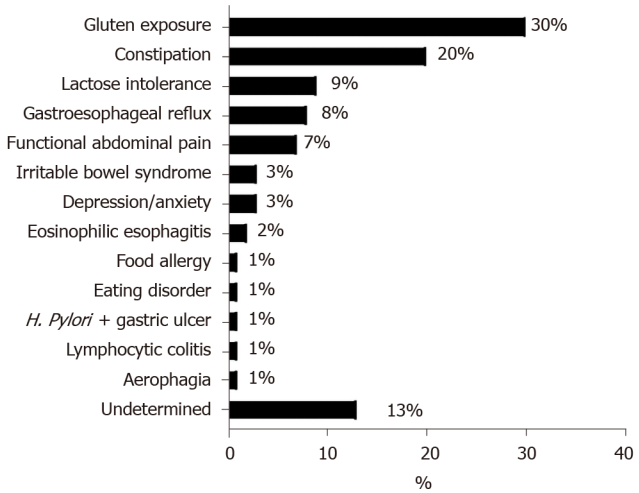


Figure 2 Reasons for non-responsive celiac disease in subjects with persistent symptoms after 6 mo on a gluten-free diet (*n* = 91). *H. Pylori*: *Helicobacter pylori*.

with a pediatric population followed at an academic center that had persisting symptoms six months after the initiation of a GFD may also differ from children who had recurrence of symptoms 12 mo or 18 mo after the diagnosis. Although resolution of symptoms may be slow after starting the GFD, our clinical conclusion is that most children are generally symptom-free after six months on a GFD. Accordingly, 85% of pediatric patients diagnosed at BCH had a good clinical response to the GFD.

Some definitions of NRCD include isolated elevation of tTG[2,6]; however, we did not include such children if they were asymptomatic because tTG is not a reliable proxy

for intestinal histology on a GFD[10]. Coexisting disorders, GFD adherence, the initial degree of tTG elevation and severity of villous atrophy all affect time to normalization of tTG which frequently takes longer than 1 year in children[11,12]. Moreover, the presence of villous atrophy is not a sine qua non for NRCD, since the formal definition is based on signs and symptoms and not histology results[2,6]. On the other hand, by only selecting children with positive serology at the time of the diagnosis of CeD, we may have missed some seronegative NRCD[13]. However, seronegative CD is rare, accounting for less than 1% of cases of pediatric biopsy-confirmed (Marsh III) CD in a recent study, so whether they have a different course than seropositive CD remains unclear[14].

As in previous adult and pediatric studies, females were more likely to be diagnosed with NRCD[5,6]. This trend has also been reported among children with functional abdominal pain, but not constipation[14,15]. Females may be more likely to experience, or report GI symptoms. We did not observe any difference in the age at the time of CeD diagnosis. Intriguingly, an association between longstanding symptoms before the diagnosis of CeD and the risk of NRCD was recently reported[5]. Due to the retrospective design of our study, we unfortunately do not have access to this information; however, we did observe lower BMI *z*-scores at CeD diagnosis among the NRCD group. Lower BMI may be a marker of disease severity, thus explaining a prolonged clinical recovery. This underscores the need to monitor CeD patients after diagnosis because malabsorption due to persistent disease and decreased food intake in relation to GI symptoms may further affect BMI and growth. Moreover, the NRCD group had significantly more symptoms at diagnosis which may reflect visceral hypersensitivity or portend a functional gastrointestinal disorder. Although these manifestations are frequently described among pediatric CeD patients[5], the rate and response to a GFD is variable[16]. Identification of a cause other than gluten exposure for NRCD in most of our patients highlights the importance of considering a coexisting disorder.

Gluten exposure was the most common cause of NRCD in our cohort, as previously reported in adults[6,8]. A strict GFD is the only current treatment for CeD. Consultation with a registered dietitian for specialized GFD education at the time of CeD diagnosis is recommended in clinical practice guidelines and standard practice at our institution[2,3]. Nonetheless, only 65% of the responder group and 82% of the NRCD group had a dietitian visit at our institution within the first 4 mo after diagnosis of CD. Due to the retrospective nature of this study, we were unable to ascertain whether some individuals received GFD education outside of our institution, or if families opted out of dietitian visits because a family member had received GFD education. Nevertheless, additional nutrition counselling after the first 120 days was also more common among NRCD patients than responders, perhaps because ongoing symptoms prompt families to seek out additional education/support. Recent American College of Gastroenterology guidelines recommend reevaluation of diet as a first step in the management of NRCD[2].

Eliminating gluten ingestion, both intentional and unintentional, is a significant challenge for many pediatric CeD patients. Even with specialized GFD education, a sizable number of patients had ongoing gluten exposure. Avoiding gluten cross-contact, which occurs during processing, preparation and serving of foods, is especially difficult. Non-adherence to a strict GFD in children and teenagers has been estimated at 8% when disclosed openly[5], but may be nearer 30% when stools are assessed for gluten immunogenic peptides[17] and may increase with GFD duration[18]. Interestingly, 82% of symptomatic NRCD patients in our study appeared to have excellent or good GFD adherence. This is likely an overestimate due to the inherent challenges associated with assessing GFD adherence through dietary recalls and interviews compared to objective measures such as fecal gluten immunogenic peptides[17].

Fourteen (67%) of the 21 symptomatic NRCD patients with suspected ongoing gluten exposure experienced resolution of their symptoms with improved GFD adherence. It is unclear whether the remaining 7 patients were unsuccessful at fully excluding dietary gluten or if healthcare providers erroneously suspected continued gluten exposure as the cause of NRCD. This cohort was prior to the development of the technology allowing the identification of gluten immunogenic peptides in urine and stools. While these technologies appear promising, currently there is no validated measure of gluten exposure other than dietitian assessment. Although the second step in the management algorithm of NRCD in adults after excluding gluten exposure or food intolerance is to proceed to duodenal biopsies to assess for villous atrophy[2], most patients in this pediatric NRCD cohort did not undergo repeat endoscopy. Moreover, some degree of villous atrophy 6 mo to 12 mo after CeD diagnosis is not uncommon

among patients in clinical remission[19].

The second most common cause of NRCD was constipation, which was also an initial manifestation of CeD for most of these patients. Constipation is a common presenting symptom among children with CeD[5,20]. 196 children included in this cohort were constipated at the time of diagnosis, but only 18 had persisting constipation that was deemed to be the cause of NRCD. The GFD is inherently low in fibers which may precipitate constipation in CeD patients[21]. Thus, some patients with constipation as a cause of NRCD may have had either initially treated constipation that recurred on the GFD after stopping laxative (n = 7), new constipation probably caused by the GFD (n = 3) or persisting constipation despite initial laxative therapy (n = 7) or noncompliance to laxative therapy (n = 1). The latter may have been suffering from functional constipation unrelated to CeD, as it is a quite common disorder in children[22]. Nevertheless, many of these patients subsequently improved, highlighting that early and intensive strategies in addition to the GFD can be effective and may avoid persistent symptoms in children.

Notably, constipation is not typically reported as an etiology of NRCD in adults, possibly because they are diagnosed with IBS. Functional abdominal pain and IBS were the cause of NRCD in 10% of our cohort. In comparison, 18% of adult NRCD patients may have IBS[6]. Other less common etiologies include lactose intolerance, present in 9% of our cohort and 7% of adults with NRCD[6]. Upper GI conditions, including gastroesophageal reflux, peptic ulcer disease, *Helicobacter pylori* infection and eosinophilic esophagitis were also responsible for persistent symptoms in pediatric NRCD. Finally, anxiety and eating disorders were responsible for NRCD and may be associated with gastrointestinal dysmotility. This underscores the need to consider the patient as a whole, and how conditions other than CeD may contribute to symptoms on a GFD.

While most children with NRCD had resolution of their symptoms over the follow-up period, symptoms persisted in 36%. Patients with constipation had higher rates of resolution than those with diagnoses such as functional abdominal pain or IBS. Functional abdominal pain is frequent among children with and without CeD, with a recent multicenter study finding a prevalence of 2.1% to 8.2%[23]. The prevalence of IBS is somewhat lower, from 1.2% to 2.9%[15,24].

Strengths and limitations

This large cohort of children with CeD provides epidemiologic data on the characteristics, causes and evolution of pediatric NRCD thereby addressing an important knowledge gap. Chart reviews conducted by either one of two authors (GV and MD) were reviewed by an expert clinical pediatric gastroenterologist; however, the retrospective nature of this study limited our ability to perform a standardized evaluation of each patient. The large number of clinicians at our institution contributed to variability in documentation and differences in approach to medical evaluation. Also, many etiologies of NCRD are diagnosed based primarily on clinical history. Although inclusion of only children who were diagnosed at BCH reduces referral bias, our cohort may differ from populations in other geographic areas.

CONCLUSION

In summary, NRCD after six months of GFD is frequent among children, especially females. Initial presentation with constipation, abdominal pain and absence of abdominal distension is associated with subsequent diagnosis of NRCD. Although gluten exposure was the most frequent cause, a wide variety of diagnoses are also found among NRCD patients. Our study highlights the importance of performing a diligent search for the above etiologies for NRCD in any celiac child with persistent clinical symptoms despite being on GFD and reinforces the need for close follow up in the first year of a CeD diagnosis.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Non-responsive celiac disease (NRCD) is defined as the persistence of symptoms in individuals with celiac disease (CeD) despite being on a gluten-free diet (GFD). There is scant literature about NRCD in the pediatric population.

Research motivation

Addressing an important knowledge gap, this study examines a large cohort of children with CeD providing data on the characteristics, causes and evolution of pediatric NRCD. By characterizing this sub-population of individuals with CeD, we are better equipped to provide clinical guidance and follow-up in those with persistent symptoms.

Research objectives

Through this retrospective cohort study, we sought to determine the incidence, clinical characteristics, and underlying causes of NRCD in children. Additionally, symptom evolution was detailed and compared to identify any potential predictors for NRCD.

Research methods

Retrospective cohort study performed at Boston Children's Hospital (BCH). Children < 18 years diagnosed with CeD by positive serology and duodenal biopsies compatible with Marsh III histology between 2008 and 2012 were identified in the BCH's Celiac Disease Program database. Medical records were longitudinally reviewed from the time of diagnosis through September 2015. NRCD was defined as persistent symptoms at 6 mo after the initiation of a GFD, and causes of NRCD as well as symptom evolution were detailed and compared to identify any potential predictors for NRCD.

Research results

Six hundred and sixteen children were included in this retrospective study, of which 91 (15%) met criteria for NRCD, and of this, most were female (77%). Abdominal pain [odds ratio (OR) 1.8 95% confidence interval (CI) 1.1-2.9], constipation (OR 3.1 95%CI 1.9-4.9) and absence of abdominal distension (OR for abdominal distension 0.4 95%CI 0.1-0.98) at diagnosis were associated with NRCD. NRCD was attributed to a wide variety of diagnoses with gluten exposure (30%) and constipation (20%) being the most common causes. 64% of children with NRCD improved on follow-up.

Research conclusions

NRCD after ≥ 6 mo of GFD is frequent among children, especially females, and is associated with initial presenting symptoms of constipation and/or abdominal pain. Gluten exposure is the most frequent cause. Our study highlights the importance of performing a diligent search for the etiologies for NRCD in any celiac child with persistent clinical symptoms despite being on GFD and reinforces the need for close follow up in the first year of a CeD diagnosis.

Research perspectives

Although the use of a large pediatric cohort positively contributes to the breadth of knowledge surrounding NRCD, and inclusion of only children who were diagnosed at BCH reduces referral bias, our cohort may differ from populations in other geographic areas. As such, a future direction of note is to extend this project to include pediatric Celiac Disease Programs across the United States, to assess if geographic location is a factor in the manifestation and characterization of NRCD.

REFERENCES

1 **Green PH**, Cellier C. Celiac disease. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **357**: 1731-1743 [PMID: 17960014 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra071600]

2 **Rubio-Tapia A**, Hill ID, Kelly CP, Calderwood AH, Murray JA; American College of Gastroenterology. ACG clinical guidelines: diagnosis and management of celiac disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2013; **108**: 656-676; quiz 677 [PMID: 23609613 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2013.79]

3 **Hill ID**, Fasano A, Guandalini S, Hoffenberg E, Levy J, Reilly N, Verma R. NASPGHAN Clinical Report on the Diagnosis and Treatment of Gluten-related Disorders. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2016; **63**: 156-165 [PMID: 27035374 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000001216]

4 **Murray JA**, Watson T, Clearman B, Mitros F. Effect of a gluten-free diet on gastrointestinal symptoms in celiac disease. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2004; **79**: 669-673 [PMID: 15051613 DOI: 10.1093/ajcn/79.4.669]

5 **Sansotta N**, Amirikian K, Guandalini S, Jericho H. Celiac Disease Symptom Resolution: Effectiveness of the Gluten-free Diet. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2018; **66**: 48-52 [PMID: 28514243 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000001634]

6 **Leffler DA**, Dennis M, Hyett B, Kelly E, Schuppan D, Kelly CP. Etiologies and predictors of diagnosis in nonresponsive celiac disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **5**: 445-450 [PMID:

17382600 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2006.12.006]
7 **O'Mahony S**, Howdle PD, Losowsky MS. Review article: management of patients with non-responsive coeliac disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1996; **10**: 671-680 [PMID: 8899074 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.1996.66237000.x]
8 **Abdulkarim AS**, Burgart LJ, See J, Murray JA. Etiology of nonresponsive celiac disease: results of a systematic approach. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 2016-2021 [PMID: 12190170 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2002.05917.x]
9 **Leffler DA**, Dennis M, Edwards George JB, Jamma S, Magge S, Cook EF, Schuppan D, Kelly CP. A simple validated gluten-free diet adherence survey for adults with celiac disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **7**: 530-536, 536.e1-536. e2 [PMID: 19268725 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2008.12.032]
10 **Silvester JA**, Kurada S, Szwajcer A, Kelly CP, Leffler DA, Duerksen DR. Tests for Serum Transglutaminase and Endomysial Antibodies Do Not Detect Most Patients With Celiac Disease and Persistent Villous Atrophy on Gluten-free Diets: a Meta-analysis. *Gastroenterology* 2017; **153**: 689-701. e1 [PMID: 28545781 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2017.05.015]
11 **Gidrewicz D**, Trevenen CL, Lyon M, Butzner JD. Normalization Time of Celiac Serology in Children on a Gluten-free Diet. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2017; **64**: 362-367 [PMID: 28231071 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000001270]
12 **Isaac DM**, Rajani S, Yaskina M, Huynh HQ, Turner JM. Antitissue Transglutaminase Normalization Postdiagnosis in Children With Celiac Disease. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2017; **65**: 195-199 [PMID: 27906802 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000001480]
13 **Makovicky P**, Rimarova K, Boor A, Makovicky P, Vodicka P, Samasca G, Kruzliak P. Correlation between antibodies and histology in celiac disease: incidence of celiac disease is higher than expected in the pediatric population. *Mol Med Rep* 2013; **8**: 1079-1083 [PMID: 23942815 DOI: 10.3892/mmr.2013.1627]
14 **Korterink JJ**, Diederen K, Benninga MA, Tabbers MM. Epidemiology of pediatric functional abdominal pain disorders: a meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0126982 [PMID: 25992621 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0126982]
15 **Hyams JS**, Di Lorenzo C, Saps M, Shulman RJ, Staiano A, van Tilburg M. Functional Disorders: Children and Adolescents. *Gastroenterology* 2016 [PMID: 27144632 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.02.015]
16 **Jericho H**, Sansotta N, Guandalini S. Extraintestinal Manifestations of Celiac Disease: Effectiveness of the Gluten-Free Diet. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2017; **65**: 75-79 [PMID: 28644353 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000001420]
17 **Comino I**, Fernández-Bañares F, Esteve M, Ortigosa L, Castillejo G, Fambuena B, Ribes-Koninckx C, Sierra C, Rodríguez-Herrera A, Salazar JC, Caunedo Á, Marugán-Miguelsanz JM, Garrote JA, Vivas S, Lo Iacono O, Nuñez A, Vaquero L, Vegas AM, Crespo L, Fernández-Salazar L, Arranz E, Jiménez-García VA, Antonio Montes-Cano M, Espín B, Galera A, Valverde J, Girón FJ, Bolonio M, Millán A, Cerezo FM, Guajardo C, Alberto JR, Rosinach M, Segura V, León F, Marinich J, Muñoz-Suano A, Romero-Gómez M, Cebolla Á, Sousa C. Fecal Gluten Peptides Reveal Limitations of Serological Tests and Food Questionnaires for Monitoring Gluten-Free Diet in Celiac Disease Patients. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2016; **111**: 1456-1465 [PMID: 27644734 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2016.439]
18 **Stefanolo JP**, Tálamo M, Dodds S, de la Paz Temprano M, Costa AF, Moreno ML, Pinto-Sánchez MI, Smecuol E, Vázquez H, Gonzalez A, Niveloni SI, Mauriño E, Verdu EF, Bai JC. Real-World Gluten Exposure in Patients With Celiac Disease on Gluten-Free Diets, Determined From Gliadin Immunogenic Peptides in Urine and Fecal Samples. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020 [PMID: 32217152 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.03.038]
19 **Belei O**, Dobrescu A, Heredea R, Iacob ER, David V, Marginean O. Histologic recovery among children with celiac disease on a gluten-free diet. A long-term follow-up single-center experience. *Arch Med Sci* 2018; **14**: 94-100 [PMID: 29379538 DOI: 10.5114/aoms.2018.72241]
20 **Khatib M**, Baker RD, Ly EK, Kozielski R, Baker SS. Presenting Pattern of Pediatric Celiac Disease. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2016; **62**: 60-63 [PMID: 26111294 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000000887]
21 **Vici G**, Belli L, Biondi M, Polzonetti V. Gluten free diet and nutrient deficiencies: A review. *Clin Nutr* 2016; **35**: 1236-1241 [PMID: 27211234 DOI: 10.1016/j.clnu.2016.05.002]
22 **Koppen IJN**, Vriesman MH, Saps M, Rajindrajith S, Shi X, van Etten-Jamaludin FS, Di Lorenzo C, Benninga MA, Tabbers MM. Prevalence of Functional Defecation Disorders in Children: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *J Pediatr* 2018; **198**: 121-130. e6 [PMID: 29656863 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2018.02.029]
23 **Saps M**, Sansotta N, Bingham S, Magazzu G, Grosso C, Romano S, Pusatcioglu C, Guandalini S. Abdominal Pain-Associated Functional Gastrointestinal Disorder Prevalence in Children and Adolescents with Celiac Disease on Gluten-Free Diet: A Multinational Study. *J Pediatr* 2017; **182**: 150-154 [PMID: 27979583 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2016.11.049]
24 **Saps M**, Adams P, Bonilla S, Chogle A, Nichols-Vinueza D. Parental report of abdominal pain and abdominal pain-related functional gastrointestinal disorders from a community survey. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2012; **55**: 707-710 [PMID: 22744191 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e3182662401]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2021 April 7; 27(13): 1321-1329

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1321

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

Endoscopic diagnosis for colorectal sessile serrated lesions

Toshihiro Nishizawa, Shuntaro Yoshida, Akira Toyoshima, Tomoharu Yamada, Yoshiki Sakaguchi, Taiga Irako, Hirotoshi Ebinuma, Takanori Kanai, Kazuhiko Koike, Osamu Toyoshima

ORCID number: Toshihiro Nishizawa 0000-0003-4876-3384; Shuntaro Yoshida 0000-0002-9437-9132; Akira Toyoshima 0000-0002-5697-6251; Tomoharu Yamada 0000-0001-6312-5706; Yoshiki Sakaguchi 0000-0001-5078-3750; Taiga Irako 0000-0002-0338-6274; Hirotoshi Ebinuma 0000-0001-6604-053X; Takanori Kanai 0000-0002-1466-4532; Kazuhiko Koike 0000-0002-9739-9243; Osamu Toyoshima 0000-0002-6953-6079.

Author contributions: Nishizawa T analyzed the data, and wrote the manuscript; Yoshida S performed colonoscopy and collected the data; Toyoshima A contributed to the data interpretation; Yamada T reviewed endoscopic images; Sakaguchi Y, Irako T, and Ebinuma H critically revised the manuscript; Kanai T and Koike K supervised the study; Toyoshima O designed the study, and analyzed the data.

Institutional review board statement: This retrospective study was approved by the Ethical Review Committee of Hattori Clinic on September 4, 2020 (approval no. S2009-U04).

Informed consent statement: Written informed consents were obtained from the participants.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflict of interests for this article.

Toshihiro Nishizawa, Hirotoshi Ebinuma, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, International University of Health and Welfare Narita Hospital, Narita 2868520, Japan

Shuntaro Yoshida, Osamu Toyoshima, Department of Gastroenterology, Toyoshima Endoscopy Clinic, Tokyo 1570066, Japan

Akira Toyoshima, Department of Colorectal Surgery, Japanese Red Cross Medical Center, Tokyo 1508935, Japan

Tomoharu Yamada, Department of Gastroenterology, The University of Tokyo, Tokyo 1138655, Japan

Yoshiki Sakaguchi, Kazuhiko Koike, Department of Gastroenterology, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Tokyo 1138655, Japan

Taiga Irako, Department of Internal Medicine, Irako Clinic, Tokyo 1560052, Japan

Takanori Kanai, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Internal Medicine, Keio University School of Medicine, Shinjuku-ku 1608582, Tokyo, Japan

Corresponding author: Toshihiro Nishizawa, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, International University of Health and Welfare Narita Hospital, 852 Hatakeda, Narita, Chiba, Narita 286-8520, Japan. nisizawa@kf7.so-net.ne.jp

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Hyperplastic polyps are considered non-neoplastic, whereas sessile serrated lesions (SSLs) are precursors of cancer *via* the ''serrated neoplastic pathway''. The clinical features of SSLs are tumor size (> 5 mm), location in the proximal colon, coverage with abundant mucus called the ''mucus cap'', indistinct borders, and a cloud-like surface. The features in magnifying narrow-band imaging are varicose microvascular vessels and expanded crypt openings. However, accurate diagnosis is often difficult.

AIM

To develop a diagnostic score system for SSLs.

METHODS

We retrospectively reviewed consecutive patients who underwent endoscopic resection during colonoscopy at the Toyoshima endoscopy clinic. We collected

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Japan

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: December 31, 2020
Peer-review started: December 31, 2020
First decision: January 27, 2021
Revised: January 29, 2021
Accepted: March 18, 2021
Article in press: March 18, 2021
Published online: April 7, 2021

P-Reviewer: Grawish ME
S-Editor: Zhang L
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Ma YJ

data on serrated polyps diagnosed by endoscopic or pathological examination. The significant factors for the diagnosis of SSLs were assessed using logistic regression analysis. Each item that was significant in multivariate analysis was assigned 1 point, with the sum of these points defined as the endoscopic SSL diagnosis score. The optimal cut-off value of the endoscopic SSL diagnosis score was determined by receiver-operating characteristic curve analysis.

RESULTS
Among 1288 polyps that were endoscopically removed, we analyzed 232 diagnosed as serrated polyps by endoscopic or pathological examination. In the univariate analysis, the location (proximal colon), size (> 5 mm), mucus cap, indistinct borders, cloud-like surface, and varicose microvascular vessels were significantly associated with the diagnosis of SSLs. In the multivariate analysis, size (> 5 mm; $P = 0.033$), mucus cap ($P = 0.005$), and indistinct borders ($P = 0.033$) were independently associated with the diagnosis of SSLs. Size > 5 mm, mucus cap, and indistinct borders were assigned 1 point each and the sum of these points was defined as the endoscopic SSL diagnosis score. The receiver-operating characteristic curve analysis showed an optimal cut-off score of 3, which predicted pathological SSLs with 75% sensitivity, 80% specificity, and 78.4% accuracy. The pathological SSL rate for an endoscopic SSL diagnosis score of 3 was significantly higher than that for an endoscopic SSL diagnosis score of 0, 1, or 2 ($P < 0.001$).

CONCLUSION
Size > 5 mm, mucus cap, and indistinct borders were significant endoscopic features for the diagnosis of SSLs. Serrated polyps with these three features should be removed during colonoscopy.

Key Words: Sessile serrated lesion; Mucus cap; Indistinct borders; Hyperplastic polyp; Endoscopic features; Size

Core Tip: The features of sessile serrated lesions (SSLs) include tumor size > 5 mm, location in the proximal colon, ''mucus cap'', indistinct borders, cloud-like surface, and varicose microvascular vessels. Our multivariate analysis revealed that size > 5 mm, mucus cap, and indistinct borders were independent predictors for SSLs. The combination of these three features in serrated polyps allowed the diagnosis of SSLs with 75% sensitivity, 80% specificity, and 78.4% accuracy.

Citation: Nishizawa T, Yoshida S, Toyoshima A, Yamada T, Sakaguchi Y, Irako T, Ebinuma H, Kanai T, Koike K, Toyoshima O. Endoscopic diagnosis for colorectal sessile serrated lesions. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(13): 1321-1329
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i13/1321.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1321

INTRODUCTION

Recent molecular biology studies have supported the classification of colorectal serrated lesions into hyperplastic polyps (HPs), sessile serrated lesions (SSLs), and traditional serrated adenomas (TSAs)[1]. HPs are considered non-neoplastic, whereas SSLs and TSAs are both precursors of cancer *via* the "serrated neoplastic pathway", which is responsible for up to 20% of all sporadic colorectal cancers[2]. The features of serrated neoplastic pathways include high microsatellite instability and the potential for rapid conversion to malignancy[3,4]. This implies that all SSLs should be accurately diagnosed and endoscopically removed[5], whereas HPs do not need to be removed. Therefore, it is essential to differentiate SSLs from HPs.

SSLs typically occur in the proximal colon[6]. Endoscopically, SSLs usually measure > 5 mm, are frequently covered by mucus called ''mucus cap'', and have indistinct borders and a cloud-like surface[7]. The features of SSLs under magnifying narrow-

band imaging (NBI) are varicose microvascular vessels and expanded crypt openings[8]. The feature of SSLs on chromoendoscopy is a type II open-shape pit pattern. In contrast, HPs commonly occur in the distal colon or rectum and are often ≤ 5 mm in size. However, differential diagnoses are often difficult[9]. We hypothesized that well-designed combination of endoscopic features might be useful for the diagnosis of SSLs. Therefore, the present study aimed to develop a diagnostic score system for SSLs.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Ethics

This retrospective study was approved by the Ethical Review Committee of the Hattori Clinic on September 4, 2020 (approval No. S2009-U04). Written informed consent was obtained from all participants. All clinical investigations were conducted according to the ethical guidelines of the Declaration of Helsinki.

Patients

We retrospectively reviewed consecutive patients who underwent polypectomy or endoscopic mucosal resection during colonoscopy between July and September 2019 and between January and March 2020 at the Toyoshima Endoscopy Clinic. Colonoscopy was performed to evaluate symptoms such as hematochezia, rectal bleeding, abdominal symptoms, abnormal bowel habits, anemia, or positive fecal immunochemical test findings or for colorectal polyp surveillance. We used an electronic endoscopy reporting system (T-File System; STS Medic, Japan) that was integrated into the clinic's patient record systems.

Endoscopic procedures

The colonoscopies were performed using an Elite CF290 endoscopy system (CV-290 and CLV-290, Olympus, Japan) with a 290 series colonoscope (CF-HQ290Z, CF-HQ290, or PCF-H290Z, Olympus, Japan) or a 260 series colonoscope (PCF-PQ260)[10]. The patients underwent colonoscopies while under conscious sedation with midazolam and/or pethidine hydrochloride. Pancolonic chromoendoscopy was performed by spraying 0.05% indigo carmine[10,11]. All polyps detected by white light imaging during colonoscopy were washed with water, and also assessed by NBI with and without magnification. The colonoscopies were performed by three expert endoscopists (Nishizawa T, Sakaguchi Y, and Toyoshima O).

Endoscopic diagnosis was performed based on the Workgroup on Serrated Polyps and Polyposis classification[12]. We removed lesions diagnosed as adenomas or clinically significant serrated polyps. A clinically significant serrated polyps was defined as any SSL, TSA, or HP measuring ≥ 1 cm anywhere in the colon or HP measuring ≥ 5 mm located proximal to the sigmoid colon[13-15]. We included polyps measuring 15 mm or more in diameter.

The location, size, morphology, and endoscopic diagnosis for each detected polyp were recorded. The location of the polyps was specified as the cecum; ascending, transverse, descending, or sigmoid colon; or rectum. The distal side from the splenic flexure was defined as the distal colon, while the proximal side to the splenic flexure was defined as the proximal colon. The polyp size was estimated by comparison with a closed snare or forceps. The morphology and presence of a mucus cap, indistinct borders, cloud-like surface, varicose microvascular vessels, and expanded crypt opening were also recorded. The mucus cap was defined as coverage with abundant mucus (Figure 1A). Indistinct borders were defined as vague demarcations of the lesion border (Figure 1B). A cloud-like surface appeared granular, nodular, or bumpy and like the surface of a cumulus cloud. Varicose microvascular vessels were defined as vessels thicker than meshed capillary vessels that meandered similar to varicose veins. Expanded crypt opening was defined as the heterogeneous expansion of nearby crypts.

The pathological findings were evaluated by hematoxylin and eosin staining and histological diagnoses were made by an expert gastrointestinal pathologist (H. W.). Serrated lesions were classified as HP, SSL, and TSA according to the World Health Organization classification[16,17]. We collected data on polyps with endoscopic or pathological diagnosis of serrated polyps.

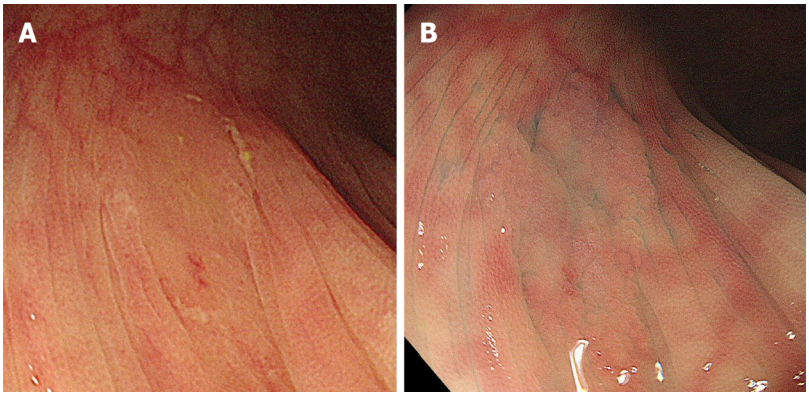


Figure 1 Endoscopic findings regarding sessile serrated lesions. A: "Mucus cap" was defined as coverage with abundant mucus; and B: Indistinct borders were defined as vague demarcations of the lesion border.

Statistical analysis

The significant factors for the diagnosis of SSLs were assessed using logistic regression analysis. The univariate and multivariate analyses included the location (proximal colon) and size (> 5 mm) and presence of mucus cap, indistinct borders, cloud-like surface, varicose microvascular vessels, and expanded crypt opening. Each item that was significant in the multivariate analysis was assigned 1 point and the sum of these points was defined as the endoscopic SSL diagnosis score. The optimal cut-off endoscopic SSL diagnosis score was determined by receiver-operating characteristic (ROC) curve analysis. The calculations were performed using StatMate software, version IV (ATOMS, Tokyo, Japan) and Ekuseru-Toukei 2015 (Social Survey Research Information company, Limited, Tokyo, Japan).

RESULTS

A total of 629 patients underwent colonoscopies with polypectomy or endoscopic mucosal resection. Among 1288 polyps removed from these patients, we identified 232 polyps as endoscopically or pathologically diagnosed serrated polyps. A study flowchart of the included polyps was presented in Figure 2.

The characteristics of the polyps are shown in Table 1. The pathological diagnoses included 72 SSLs, 130 HPs, 1 TSA, 7 adenomas, 20 normal mucosa, and 2 others.

Table 2 shows the results of the univariate and multivariate analyses for the diagnosis of SSL. In the univariate analyses, the location (proximal colon), size > 5 mm, mucus cap, indistinct borders, cloud-like surface, and varicose microvascular vessels were significantly associated with the diagnosis of SSL. On the other hand, expanded crypts opening was not significant in the univariate analysis. In the multivariate analysis, size > 5 mm (P = 0.033), mucus cap (P = 0.005), and indistinct borders (P = 0.033) were independently associated with the diagnosis of SSL. Size > 5 mm, mucus cap, and indistinct borders were each assigned 1 point and the sum of the points was defined as the endoscopic SSL diagnosis score. The minimum and maximum endoscopic SSL diagnosis scores were 0 and 3, respectively. In the ROC curve analysis, the area under the curve was 0.806 and the optimal endoscopic SSL diagnosis score cut-off was 3 (Figure 3A), which corresponded to 75% sensitivity, 80% specificity, and 78.4% accuracy for the prediction of pathological SSL. The ROC curves of the three predictors (size, mucus cap, and indistinct borders) were presented in Figure 3B-D, respectively.

Figure 4 shows the pathological SSL rates for each endoscopic SSL diagnosis score. The pathological SSL rate for an endoscopic SSL diagnosis score of 3 was significantly higher than that for an endoscopic SSL diagnosis score of 0, 1, or 2 (P < 0.001).

DISCUSSION

We found that size > 5 mm, mucus cap, and indistinct borders were independent predictors for SSLs. The combination of these three features in serrated polyps allowed the diagnosis of SSLs with 75% sensitivity, 80% specificity, and 78.4% accuracy.

Table 1 Polyp characteristics

Polyp characteristics	
Size	
Diminutive (≤ 5 mm)	114
Small (6-9 mm)	82
Large (≥ 10 mm)	36
Shape (Paris classification)	
Is	4
IIa	226
IIb	1
IIc	1
Location	
Cecum	33
Ascending colon	61
Transvers colon	71
Descending colon	12
Sigmoid colon	42
Rectum	13
Pathology	
Sessile serrated lesion	72
Hyperplastic polyp	130
Traditional serrated adenoma	1
Adenoma	7
Normal mucosa	20
Others	2

Table 2 Univariate and multivariate analyses on the diagnosis of sessile serrated lesion

Variables	Univariate analysis			Multivariate analysis		
	Partial regression coefficient	95% confidence interval	*P* value	Partial regression coefficient	95% confidence interval	*P* value
Location (proximal colon)	1.094	0.374-1.813	0.003	0.197	-0.685-1.078	0.662
Size (> 5mm)	2.050	1.369-2.731	< 0.001	0.904	0.074-1.733	0.033
Mucus cap	2.548	1.657-3.440	< 0.001	1.520	0.448-2.592	0.005
Indistinct borders	2.067	1.371-2.764	< 0.001	0.926	0.075-1.778	0.033
Varicose microvascular vessel	0.668	0.088-1.248	0.024	-0.133	-0.869-0.602	0.723
Cloud-like surface	1.640	1.015-2.264	< 0.001	0.708	-0.022-1.437	0.057
Expanded crypts opening	0.367	-0.202-0.936	0.206	-0.497	-1.198-0.203	0.164

Various studies have sought to clarify the features of SSLs. Hasegawa *et al*[18] investigated 107 SSLs to discriminate them from other serrated lesions, reporting that the mean lesion size of SSLs was larger than that of HP (14.2 *vs* 6.2 mm; $P < 0.01$). Moreover, SSL was preferentially located in the proximal rather than the distal colon (81.8% *vs* 18.2%), whereas HP was located less often in the proximal colon than in the distal colon.

Hazewinkel *et al*[19] investigated 150 polyps, including 50 SSLs, 50 HPs, and 50

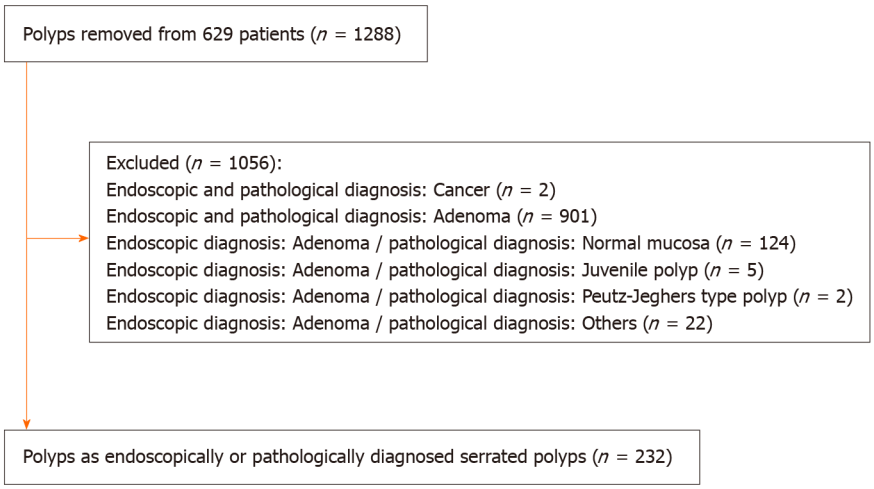


Figure 2 Flowchart of polyp enrollment.

adenomas. Their multivariate analysis demonstrated that indistinct borders [odds ratio (OR): 3.11, P = 0.001] and cloud-like surface (OR: 2.65, P = 0.015) were independent diagnostic factors for SSLs on white-light imaging.

Uraoka *et al*[1] investigated 89 Lesions, including 38 SSLs and 41 HPs. Their multivariate analysis showed that varicose microvascular vessels (OR: 8.2, P = 0.001), size ≥ 10 mm (OR: 7.2, P = 0.002), and proximal location (OR: 6.1, P = 0.004) were independent diagnostic factors for SSLs.

Pereyra *et al*[20] investigated 440 polyps, including 34 SSLs, 135 HPs, and 249 adenomas. Their multivariate analysis showed that flat morphology (OR: 3.81, P = 0.002), red-colored surface (OR: 12.97, P <0.001), right-sided location (OR: 22.21, P <0.001), and mucus cap (OR: 8.77, P < 0.001) were independent diagnostic factors for SSLs.

Murakami *et al*[7] summarized the features of SSLs in their review report, indicating that SSLs were > 5 mm, frequently covered by a mucus cap, and more commonly located in the proximal colon. The features also included small dark spots and varicose microvascular vessels on magnifying NBI and type II open pit patterns on magnifying chromoendoscopy. The small dark spots are nearly synonymous with expanded crypt openings and these are considered to correspond to type II open pit patterns. This phenomenon is likely due to mucin overproduction, which could also lead to the mucus cap[19].

The results of our univariate analysis showed that proximal colon, size > 5 mm, mucus cap, indistinct borders, cloud-like surface, and varicose microvascular vessels were significant factors for the diagnosis of SSLs. Multivariate analysis revealed that size > 5 mm, mucus cap, and indistinct borders were independent predictors for SSLs in our clinical setting.

A combination of endoscopic features has also been previously proposed for the diagnosis of SSL. For instance, Yamada *et al*[21] evaluated the combination of three endoscopic features for SSLs. The combination of dilated and branching vessels (synonymous with varicose microvascular vessels), proximal location, and size (≥ 10 mm) resulted in an area under the curve of 0.7832. The best cut-off point was 2, which corresponded to 79% sensitivity and 81% specificity.

The endoscopic SSL diagnosis score consists of size (> 5 mm), mucus cap, and indistinct borders. The area under the curve in this study was 0.806. The optimal cut-off point was 3, which resulted in 75% sensitivity and 80% specificity. Our score is simple and does not require magnifying NBI. Thus, it may be useful in busy clinical settings or examinations with a scope without a magnifying function.

The present study has several limitations. First, this retrospective study was conducted at a single institution; however, the recording of medical data was well controlled. Second, our study did not perform magnifying chromoendoscopy. A follow-up study is needed to verify the validity of the endoscopic SSL diagnosis score.

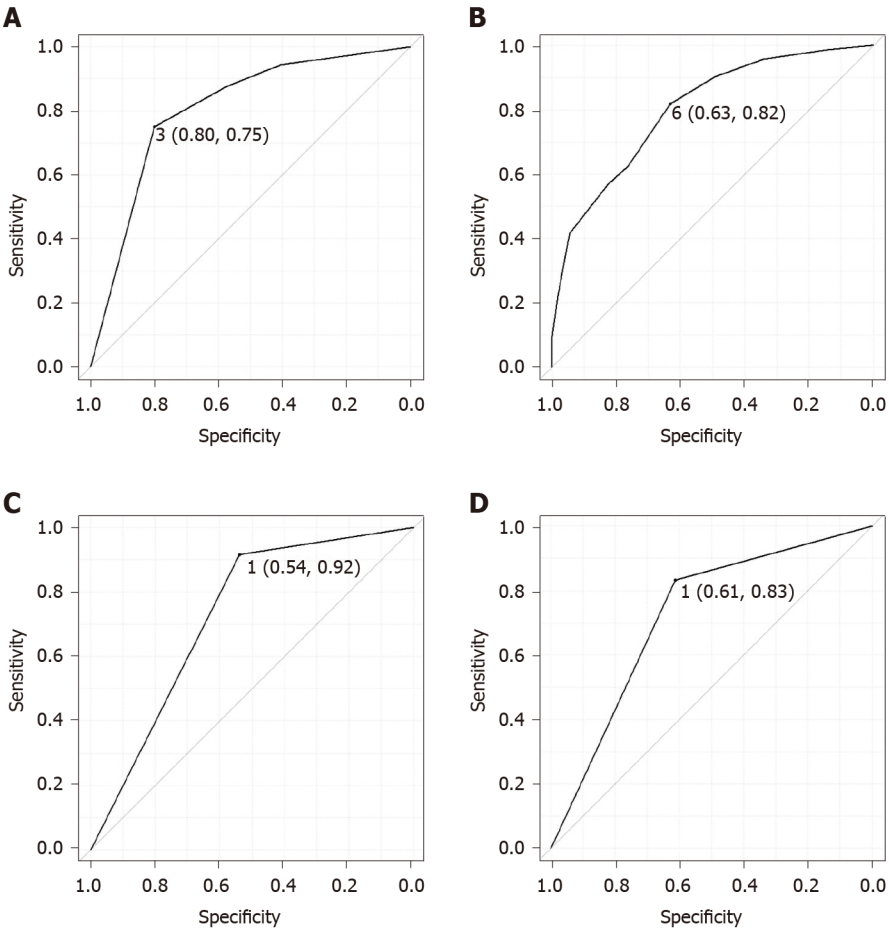


Figure 3 Receiver-operating characteristic curve for predicting sessile serrated lesions. A: Receiver-operating characteristic (ROC) curve for predicting sessile serrated lesion (SSL) based on the endoscopic SSL diagnosis score: The area under the curve (AUC) was 0.806. The optimal cutoff value was 3, for which the endoscopic SSL diagnosis score predicted pathological SSLs with 75% sensitivity and 80% specificity; B: ROC curve for predicting SSL based on polyp size: AUC was 0.801. Size ≥ 6 mm predicted pathological SSLs with 82% sensitivity, and 63% specificity; C: ROC curve for predicting SSL based on mucus cap: AUC was 0.727. The presence of mucus cap predicted pathological SSLs with 92% sensitivity, and 54% specificity; and D: ROC curve for predicting SSL based on indistinct borders: AUC was 0.723. The presence of indistinct borders predicted pathological SSLs with 83% sensitivity, and 61% specificity.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, size (> 5 mm), mucus cap, and indistinct borders were significant endoscopic features for the diagnosis of SSLs. Serrated polyps with these three features should be removed during colonoscopy.

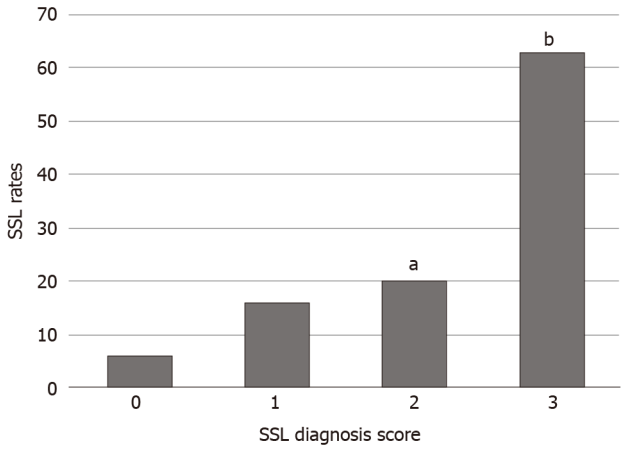


Figure 4 Sessile serrated lesion diagnosis rates based on the endoscopic sessile serrated lesion diagnosis score. [a]*P* < 0.05 compared to an endoscopic Sessile serrated lesion diagnosis score of 0; [b]*P* < 0.001 compared to an endoscopic sessile serrated lesion diagnosis score of 0, 1, or 2. SSL: Sessile serrated lesion.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

The serrated neoplastic pathway is responsible for up to 20% of all sporadic colorectal cancers. Sessile serrated lesions (SSLs) should be accurately diagnosed and endoscopically removed.

Research motivation

Various findings have been proposed as features of SSLs. However, accurate diagnosis is often difficult.

Research objectives

This study developed a scoring system to predict the diagnosis of SSLs.

Research methods

We retrospectively reviewed patients who underwent endoscopic resection at the Toyoshima Endoscopy Clinic. We collected data on 232 polyps that were endoscopically or pathologically diagnosed as serrated polyps. The significant factors for the diagnosis of SSLs were assessed using logistic regression analysis.

Research results

In the multivariate analyses, size (> 5 mm; $P = 0.033$), mucus cap ($P = 0.005$), and indistinct borders ($P = 0.033$) were independently associated with a diagnosis of SSL. The endoscopic SSL diagnosis score consisted of three features. An endoscopic SSL diagnosis score of 3 predicted pathological SSLs with 75% sensitivity, 80% specificity, and 78.4% accuracy.

Research conclusions

Size (> 5 mm), mucus cap, and indistinct borders were significant endoscopic features for the diagnosis of SSL. Serrated polyps with these three features should be removed during colonoscopy.

Research perspectives

A follow-up study is needed to verify the validity of the endoscopic SSL diagnosis score.

REFERENCES

1 **Uraoka T**, Higashi R, Horii J, Harada K, Hori K, Okada H, Mizuno M, Tomoda J, Ohara N, Tanaka T, Chiu HM, Yahagi N, Yamamoto K. Prospective evaluation of endoscopic criteria characteristic of sessile serrated adenomas/polyps. *J Gastroenterol* 2015; **50**: 555-563 [PMID: 25270966 DOI:

10.1007/s00535-014-0999-y]
2 **Snover DC**. Update on the serrated pathway to colorectal carcinoma. *Hum Pathol* 2011; **42**: 1-10 [PMID: 20869746 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2010.06.002]
3 **East JE**, Atkin WS, Bateman AC, Clark SK, Dolwani S, Ket SN, Leedham SJ, Phull PS, Rutter MD, Shepherd NA, Tomlinson I, Rees CJ. British Society of Gastroenterology position statement on serrated polyps in the colon and rectum. *Gut* 2017; **66**: 1181-1196 [PMID: 28450390 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-314005]
4 **Kinoshita S**, Nishizawa T, Uraoka T. Progression to invasive cancer from sessile serrated adenoma/polyp. *Dig Endosc* 2018; **30**: 266 [PMID: 29168233 DOI: 10.1111/den.12988]
5 **Sano W**, Hirata D, Teramoto A, Iwatate M, Hattori S, Fujita M, Sano Y. Serrated polyps of the colon and rectum: Remove or not? *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 2276-2285 [PMID: 32476792 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i19.2276]
6 **Gurudu SR**, Heigh RI, De Petris G, Heigh EG, Leighton JA, Pasha SF, Malagon IB, Das A. Sessile serrated adenomas: demographic, endoscopic and pathological characteristics. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 3402-3405 [PMID: 20632442 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i27.3402]
7 **Murakami T**, Sakamoto N, Nagahara A. Endoscopic diagnosis of sessile serrated adenoma/polyp with and without dysplasia/carcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2018; **24**: 3250-3259 [PMID: 30090005 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v24.i29.3250]
8 **Kashida H**. Endoscopic diagnosis of sessile serrated polyp: A systematic review. *Dig Endosc* 2019; **31**: 16-23 [PMID: 30151942 DOI: 10.1111/den.13263]
9 **Singh R**, Zorrón Cheng Tao Pu L, Koay D, Burt A. Sessile serrated adenoma/polyps: Where are we at in 2016? *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 7754-7759 [PMID: 27678358 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i34.7754]
10 **Toyoshima O**, Yoshida S, Nishizawa T, Yamakawa T, Sakitani K, Hata K, Takahashi Y, Fujishiro M, Watanabe H, Koike K. CF290 for pancolonic chromoendoscopy improved sessile serrated polyp detection and procedure time: a propensity score-matching study. *Endosc Int Open* 2019; **7**: E987-E993 [PMID: 31367679 DOI: 10.1055/a-0953-1909]
11 **Toyoshima O**, Nishizawa T, Yoshida S, Sekiba K, Kataoka Y, Hata K, Watanabe H, Tsuji Y, Koike K. Expert endoscopists with high adenoma detection rates frequently detect diminutive adenomas in proximal colon. *Endosc Int Open* 2020; **8**: E775-E782 [PMID: 32490163 DOI: 10.1055/a-1136-9971]
12 **IJspeert JE**, Bastiaansen BA, van Leerdam ME, Meijer GA, van Eeden S, Sanduleanu S, Schoon EJ, Bisseling TM, Spaander MC, van Lelyveld N, Bargeman M, Wang J, Dekker E; Dutch Workgroup serrAted polypS & Polyposis (WASP). Development and validation of the WASP classification system for optical diagnosis of adenomas, hyperplastic polyps and sessile serrated adenomas/polyps. *Gut* 2016; **65**: 963-970 [PMID: 25753029 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-308411]
13 **Anderson JC**, Butterly LF, Weiss JE, Robinson CM. Providing data for serrated polyp detection rate benchmarks: an analysis of the New Hampshire Colonoscopy Registry. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2017; **85**: 1188-1194 [PMID: 28153571 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2017.01.020]
14 **Li D**, Woolfrey J, Jiang SF, Jensen CD, Zhao WK, Kakar S, Santamaria M, Rumore G, Armstrong MA, Postlethwaite D, Corley DA, Levin TR. Diagnosis and predictors of sessile serrated adenoma after educational training in a large, community-based, integrated healthcare setting. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2018; **87**: 755-765. e1 [PMID: 28843582 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2017.08.012]
15 **Klair JS**, Ashat M, Johnson D, Arora S, Onteddu N, Machain Palacio JG, Samuel R, Bilal M, Buddam A, Gupta A, Gunderson A, Guturu P, Soota K, Chandra S, Murali AR. Serrated polyp detection rate and advanced adenoma detection rate from a US multicenter cohort. *Endoscopy* 2020; **52**: 61-67 [PMID: 31739370 DOI: 10.1055/a-1031-5672]
16 **Nagtegaal ID**, Odze RD, Klimstra D, Paradis V, Rugge M, Schirmacher P, Washington KM, Carneiro F, Cree IA; WHO Classification of Tumours Editorial Board. The 2019 WHO classification of tumours of the digestive system. *Histopathology* 2020; **76**: 182-188 [PMID: 31433515 DOI: 10.1111/his.13975]
17 **Kim JH**, Kang GH. Evolving pathologic concepts of serrated lesions of the colorectum. *J Pathol Transl Med* 2020; **54**: 276-289 [PMID: 32580537 DOI: 10.4132/jptm.2020.04.15]
18 **Hasegawa S**, Mitsuyama K, Kawano H, Arita K, Maeyama Y, Akagi Y, Watanabe Y, Okabe Y, Tsuruta O, Sata M. Endoscopic discrimination of sessile serrated adenomas from other serrated lesions. *Oncol Lett* 2011; **2**: 785-789 [PMID: 22866127 DOI: 10.3892/ol.2011.341]
19 **Hazewinkel Y**, López-Cerón M, East JE, Rastogi A, Pellisé M, Nakajima T, van Eeden S, Tytgat KM, Fockens P, Dekker E. Endoscopic features of sessile serrated adenomas: validation by international experts using high-resolution white-light endoscopy and narrow-band imaging. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **77**: 916-924 [PMID: 23433877 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.12.018]
20 **Pereyra L**, Gómez EJ, González R, Fischer C, Eraña GB, Torres AG, Correa L, Mella JM, Panigadi GN, Luna P, Pedreira SC, Cimmino DG, Boerr LA. Finding sessile serrated adenomas: is it possible to identify them during conventional colonoscopy? *Dig Dis Sci* 2014; **59**: 3021-3026 [PMID: 25073956 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-014-3295-z]
21 **Yamada M**, Sakamoto T, Otake Y, Nakajima T, Kuchiba A, Taniguchi H, Sekine S, Kushima R, Ramberan H, Parra-Blanco A, Fujii T, Matsuda T, Saito Y. Investigating endoscopic features of sessile serrated adenomas/polyps by using narrow-band imaging with optical magnification. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; **82**: 108-117 [PMID: 25840928 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.12.037]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2021 April 7; 27(13): 1330-1340

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1330

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

Factors influencing the short-term and long-term survival of hepatocellular carcinoma patients with portal vein tumor thrombosis who underwent chemoembolization

Ke-Li Chen, Jian Gao

ORCID number: Ke-Li Chen 0000-0003-2027-4677; Jian Gao 0000-0002-9799-160X.

Author contributions: Chen KL was responsible for designing the study, collecting data, analyzing data and writing the paper; Gao J was responsible for designing the study and guiding important content of the article.

Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 81572888.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Ethics Committee of the Second Affiliated Hospital of Chongqing Medical University (No. 2020-122).

Informed consent statement: All study participants gave their informed consent prior to study enrollment (by written or verbal).

Conflict-of-interest statement: None declared.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Ke-Li Chen, Jian Gao, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, The Second Affiliated Hospital of Chongqing Medical University, Chongqing 400010, China

Corresponding author: Jian Gao, PhD, Chief Doctor, Professor, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, The Second Affiliated Hospital of Chongqing Medical University, No. 76 Linjiang Road, Yuzhong District, Chongqing 400010, China.
982213482@qq.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

The factors affecting the short-term and long-term prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) patients with portal vein tumor thrombosis (PVTT) receiving transarterial chemoembolization (TACE) are still unclear.

AIM

To clarify the predictors correlated with the short-term and long-term survival of HCC patients with PVTT who underwent TACE.

METHODS

The medical records of 181 HCC patients with PVTT who underwent TACE at the Second Affiliated Hospital of Chongqing Medical University from January 2015 to July 2019 were retrospectively analyzed. We explored the short-term and long-term prognostic factors by comparing the preoperative indicators of patients who died and survived within 3 mo and 12 mo after TACE. Multivariate analyses were conducted using logistic regression. The area under the receiver operating characteristic curve (area under curve) was used to evaluate the predictive ability of the factors related to the short-term and long-term prognosis.

RESULTS

The median survival time was 4.8 mo (range: 2.5-8.85 mo). The 3 mo, 6 mo, and 12 mo survival rates were 68.5%, 38.7%, and 15.5%, respectively. In multivariable analysis, total bilirubin, sex, and aspartate aminotransferase (AST) were closely linked to short-term survival. When AST ≥ 87 U/L and total bilirubin ≥ 16.15 μmol/L, the 3-mo survival rate after TACE was reduced significantly ($P < 0.05$). AST had the best predictive ability, followed by total bilirubin, while sex had the worst predictive ability for short-term survival area under curve: 0.763 (AST) *vs*

Manuscript source: Unsolicited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: China

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: January 9, 2021
Peer-review started: January 9, 2021
First decision: February 11, 2021
Revised: February 19, 2021
Accepted: March 7, 2021
Article in press: March 7, 2021
Published online: April 7, 2021

P-Reviewer: Pang H, Sempokuya T, Tarazov PG
S-Editor: Zhang L
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Liu JH

0.707 (total bilirubin) *vs* 0.554 (sex)]. The long-term survival outcome was significantly better in patients with a single lesion than in those with ≥ three lesions (P = 0.009). Patients with massive block HCC had a worse long-term survival than patients with nodular and diffuse HCC (P = 0.001).

CONCLUSION
AST, total bilirubin, and sex are independent factors associated with short-term survival. The number of tumors and the gross pathological type of tumor are related to the long-term outcome.

Key Words: Transarterial chemoembolization; Hepatocellular carcinoma; Portal vein tumor thrombosis; Survival; Prognostic factors

Core Tip: It is unclear which factors affect the short-term and long-term prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma patients with portal vein tumor thrombosis receiving transarterial chemoembolization. In our research, we clarified the predictors correlated with the short-term and long-term survival of hepatocellular carcinoma patients with portal vein tumor thrombosis who underwent transarterial chemoembolization by analyzing preoperative indicators. Results showed that aspartate aminotransferase, sex, and total bilirubin were independent factors associated with short-term survival. The number of lesions and the gross pathological type of tumor were related to the long-term outcome.

Citation: Chen KL, Gao J. Factors influencing the short-term and long-term survival of hepatocellular carcinoma patients with portal vein tumor thrombosis who underwent chemoembolization. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(13): 1330-1340
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i13/1330.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1330

INTRODUCTION

Primary liver cancer is currently one of the most common malignant tumors, and it is among the top five causes of death and morbidity from malignant tumors around the world[1]. Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the most common pathological type, accounting for approximately 90% of all primary liver cancers. Because of its biological and anatomical characteristics, HCC easily invades the portal vein during the progression of liver cancer and forms portal vein tumor thrombosis (PVTT). Some reports have proposed that the incidence of HCC with PVTT is approximately 44%-62.2%[2]. HCC accompanied by PVTT is closely associated with a poor prognosis and is likely to lead to intrahepatic metastasis, liver function damage, portal hypertension, upper gastrointestinal bleeding, and other complications. The median overall survival time of HCC patients with PVTT who receive no treatment is only 2.7 mo[3].

There is still controversy about the treatment of HCC with PVTT in Eastern and Western countries. Previous studies have suggested that HCC with PVTT should be classified as stage C of Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer and is no longer suitable for surgical treatment[4]. Some researchers have mentioned that compared with conservative treatment, TACE is a safe and effective therapy for selected HCC patients with PVTT[5-7]. However, some patients die in the short term after TACE, and patients who have expected postoperative survival times of less than 3 mo may not be suitable for TACE.

At present, the factors affecting the short-term (3 mo) and long-term (12 mo) prognosis of HCC patients with PVTT treated with TACE are still unclear. We aimed to identify the preoperative factors related to the short-term and long-term prognosis by comparing the preoperative clinical data of patients who died in the short-term (< 3 mo) with those who survived into the long-term (> 12 mo) after TACE. The area under the curve (AUC) was utilized to assess the predictability of the factors related to short-term and long-term survival to provide some help for doctors when screening HCC

patients with PVTT to identify those who can benefit from TACE.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patient

We enrolled a total of 181 HCC patients with PVTT who received TACE in the Second Affiliated Hospital of Chongqing Medical University from January 2015 to July 2019. The inclusion criteria were as follows: (1) Histopathology confirmed as HCC or clinically diagnosed as HCC; (2) Abdominal color Doppler ultrasound, digital subtraction angiography, contrast-enhanced computerized tomography, or magnetic resonance imaging showed signs of PVTT; (3) No treatment, such as surgery, radiotherapy, chemotherapy, liver transplantation, targeted, or biological therapy, was administered before and after TACE; (4) Age ≥ 18 years; and (5) Complete clinical data were available. Patients with other malignancies or severe heart and lung diseases were eliminated. The follow-up endpoint was July 2020 or the date of death, whichever came first. The follow-up was conducted by telephoning or outpatient visits. During our follow-up, 14 patients received other treatments, such as targeted therapy and High Intensity Focused Ultrasound, and one patient was diagnosed with and treated for a hematologic malignancy. Twenty-six patients were lost to follow-up. The above patients were not included in the study. The study complied with the ethical guidelines of the Declaration of Helsinki in 1964 and passed the review of the Review Committee of the Second Affiliated Hospital of Chongqing Medical University.

Data collection

We collected the basic data of the patients, including sex, age, cause of hepatitis, ascites, hepatoportal arteriovenous fistula, liver cirrhosis, cavernous transformation of the portal vein, Child-Pugh grade, the model for end-stage liver disease score, the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group score, and albumin-bilirubin grade (ALBI grade). The biochemical parameters included the following indicators: Prealbumin, serum albumin (ALB), total bilirubin, alanine aminotransferase (ALT), aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alpha-fetoprotein, activated partial thromboplastin time, prothrombin time, international normalized ratio, hemoglobin, platelet count, white blood cell count, serum cholinesterase, and gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase. The characteristics of the tumors included the number and size of tumors, the type of PVTT, gross pathological type, invasion of the left and right liver lobes and inferior vena cava tumor thrombus. Cheng's classification of PVTT was applied[8]. The formula for calculating the ALBI score was as follows: ALBI = log10 bilirubin × 0.66 + albumin × (-0.085)[9]. Gross pathological types of liver cancer included the massive block type, the nodular type, and the diffuse type. The clinical diagnostic criteria for patients with HCC are in line with the European Society for Medical Oncology Clinical Practice Guidelines[10].

TACE procedure

The puncture of the artery used Seldinger technology. The right femoral artery was often selected. The catheter was delivered to the celiac trunk and the common hepatic artery, and arteriography was performed to identify the tumor's nutrient artery. The catheter was sent into the tumor-feeding artery and injected with chemotherapy drugs. Chemoembolization drugs commonly included lipiodol, polyvinyl alcohol particles, cisplatin, bleomycin, gelatin sponge particles, *etc*.

Statistical analysis

The mean ± SD or median were used to express the continuous variables. Categorical variables are presented as *n* (%). Two groups of data were compared using independent-samples *t* tests, Mann-Whitney *U* tests, χ^2 tests or Fisher's exact tests. The statistically significant indicators in the univariate analysis ($P < 0.05$) were selected in multivariate analysis in the study. The independent predictors for survival were determined by logistic regression analysis. The predictive ability of the independent predictors for short-term survival was assessed by the AUC. The cutoff value was calculated by the receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curves. The Kaplan-Meier method was used to plot the survival curves. SPSS 25.0 software (Armonk, NY, United States) was used to perform all statistical analyses. When $P < 0.05$, the statistical results were considered significant.

RESULTS

Patient basic characteristics

A total of 181 HCC patients with PVTT who underwent TACE were enrolled in our study. Their baseline data are shown in Table 1. The average age of the patients was 52.16 ± 9.73 years. The 3 mo, 6 mo, and 12 mo survival rates were 68.5%, 38.7%, and 15.5%, respectively. In our study, 159 patients (87.8%) were men and 22 patients (12.2%) were women, hepatitis B patients accounted for 90.1%, and 133 (73.5%) patients had a background of cirrhosis. According to the type of PVTT, 29 (16%) patients, 77 (42.5%) patients, 68 (37.6%) patients, and 7 (3.9%) patients were classified as having type I, II, III and IV PVTT, respectively. For the Child-Pugh grade, 123 (68%) had grade A, 55 (30.4%) had grade B, and 3 (1.6%) had grade C. Patients with greater than or equal to 3 lesions accounted for 48.1%. The median survival time was 4.8 mo.

Short-term survival outcome

Of the 181 patients, 56 patients died within 3 mo after interventional therapy, and 125 patients survived. The clinical data of patients who died and survived within 3 mo after treatment were compared. The results of the univariate analysis are shown in Table 2. Multivariate analysis showed that total bilirubin [odds ratio (OR): 1.027, 95% confidence interval (CI): 1-1.054 P = 0.046), sex (OR: 2.832, 95%CI: 1.025-7.828, P = 0.045] and AST (OR: 1.014, 95%CI: 1.006-1.021, P < 0.01) were significant independent predictors of short-term survival (Table 3).

The AUC was used to evaluate the predictive ability of these indicators for short-term survival. AST (AUC: 0.763, 95%CI: 0.686-0.841) had the best predictive ability, followed by total bilirubin (AUC: 0.707, 95%CI: 0.627-0.788), while sex (AUC: 0.554, 95%CI: 0.461-0.648) had the worst predictive ability (Figure 1).

The cutoff values of the above indicators were calculated by using ROC curves, and the 3-mo cumulative survival rates of patients with AST < 87 U/L and AST ≥ 87 U/L were 84.6% and 40.6% (Figure 2A), respectively. The difference was significant (P < 0.001). The 3-mo cumulative survival rates of the patients with total bilirubin < 16.15 μmol/L and bilirubin ≥ 16.15 μmol/L were 86.9% and 53.6% (Figure 2B), respectively, and the difference was statistically significant (P < 0.001). The 3-mo cumulative survival rates of men and women were 71.1% and 50% (Figure 2C), respectively. The discrepancy was statistically significant (P = 0.019).

Long-term survival outcome

Of the 181 patients, 150 died within 12 mo after interventional therapy, and 31 survived. Univariate analysis showed that the number of tumors, invasion of the left and right liver lobes, pathological type, platelet count, and gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase were correlated with the long-term survival of patients (Table 4), and logistic regression analysis showed that the number of lesions and pathological type were independent predictors of long-term survival (Table 3). The long-term survival outcome was significantly better in patients with a single lesion than in those with ≥ three lesions (OR: 5.809, 95%CI: 1.563-21.594, P = 0.009). Patients with massive block HCC had a worse long-term survival than patients with nodular and diffuse HCC (OR: 0.197, 95%CI: 0.075-0.521, P = 0.001).

We used ROC curves to evaluate the predictability of the number of tumors and pathology for long-term survival. Number of tumors (AUC: 0.665, 95%CI: 0.568-0.763) had the best predictive ability, followed by gross pathology (AUC: 0.620, 95%CI: 0.510-0.730) (Figure 3).

DISCUSSION

In this paper, we found that sex, AST, and total bilirubin were independent influential factors for short-term survival. The incidence and mortality of HCC in men were higher than in women[11]. This was different from the conclusion in our article. The main reason was the imbalance of gender ratio in the article. The AUC of sex was not high (AUC: 0.554, 95%CI: 0.461-0.648, P > 0.05), which showed that although sex was an independent factor influencing short-term prognosis, its predictability was not well.

Total bilirubin was a biochemical indicator of liver metabolic function. Carr *et al*[12] believed that high levels of serum bilirubin can increase the risk of death in HCC patients with PVTT. In our study, it was also found that elevated bilirubin levels were associated with poor short-term survival in HCC patients with PVTT who underwent TACE. According to the AUC of bilirubin, we thought that this indicator had good

Table 1 Characteristic of the 181 patients

Parameters	Patients, *n* = 181
Age in yr	52.16 ± 9.73
Sex, men/women	159/22
Cause of liver disease, hepatitis B/C/B and C/others	163/3/1/14
Tumor size, < 5 cm/≥ 5 cm, < 10 cm/≥ 10 cm	39/86/56
Number of tumors, 1/2/≥ 3	82/12/87
Liver cirrhosis, no/yes	48/133
Ascites, no/small/moderate-massive	91/70/20
CTPV, no/yes	158/23
Invade left and right liver lobes, no/yes	119/62
Type of gross pathology, massive/nodular/diffuse	112/59/10
PVTT type, I/II/III/IV	29/77/68/7
Inferior vena cava tumor thrombus, no/yes	171/10
Arteriovenous fistula, no/yes	125/56
Total bilirubin, μmol/L	17.1 (12.3-24.7)
Prealbumin, mg/L	110 (79-147)
Albumin, g/L	37 ± 4.8
Hemoglobin, g/L	127 (115-142)
WBC, 10^9/L	5.1 (3.925-6.505)
PLT, 10^9/L	116 (81- 179.5)
INR	1.12 (1.055-1.205)
PT, S	14.3 (13.7-15.25)
APTT, S	39.5 (37-42.8)
ALT, U/L	46 (31-71.5)
AST, U/L	65 (46-109.5)
GGT, U/L	211 (124.5-352.5)
Cholinesterase, kU/L	4.5 (3.065-5.78)
Creatinine, μmol/L	68 (57.7-78.1)
AFP, μg/L	1210 (82.905-1210)
Child-Pugh grade, A/B/C	123/55/3
ECOG score, 0/1/2/3	8/142/29/2
ALBI grade, 1/2/3	56/120/5
MELD score	7.67 (6.08-9.54)
Overall survival time, mo	4.8 (2.5-8.85)

AFP: Alpha fetoprotein; ALBI: Albumin-bilirubin; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; APTT: Activated partial thromboplastin time; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; CTPV: Cavernous transformation of the portal vein; ECOG: Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group; GGT: Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase; INR: International normalized ratio; MELD: Model of end-stage liver disease; PLT: Platelets; PVTT: Portal vein tumor thrombosis; WBC: White blood cell.

predictive power. When total bilirubin was greater than 16.15 μmol/L, the patients' mortality within 3 mo after TACE was significantly increased. This suggested that for patients with preoperative total bilirubin greater than 16.15 μmol/L, the treatment of lowering the bilirubin level may be beneficial in reducing the short-term postoperative mortality.

AST level is elevated in patients with liver disease, reflecting the degree of liver

Table 2 Univariate analysis of survivors *vs* non-survivors at 3 mo after transarterial chemoembolization

Parameters	Survivors, *n* = 125	Non-survivors, *n* = 56	*P* value
Age in yr	52.56 ± 9.966	51.27 ± 9.212	0.18
Sex, men/women	114/11	45/11	0.04
Cause of liver disease, hepatitis B/C/B and C/others	113/1/0/11	50/2/1/3	0.157
Tumor size, < 5 cm/≥ 5 cm, < 10 cm/≥ 10 cm	29/57/39	10/29/17	0.659
Number of tumors, 1/2/≥ 3	62/10/53	20/2/34	0.06
Liver cirrhosis, no/yes	36/89	12/44	0.299
Ascites, no/small/moderate-massive	68/47/10	23/23/10	0.087
CTPV, no/yes	110/15	48/8	0.67
Invade left and right liver lobes, no/yes	85/40	34/22	0.34
Type of gross pathology, massive / nodular and diffuse	78/47	34/22	0.829
PVTT type, I/II/III/IV	24/52/44/5	5/25/24/2	0.354
Inferior vena cava tumor thrombus, no/yes	119/6	52/4	0.775
Arteriovenous fistula, no/yes	89/36	36/20	0.352
Total bilirubin, μmol/L	15 (11.15-21.75)	22.25 (17.175-32)	< 0.01
Prealbumin, mg/L	119 (87-159.5)	91.5 (67.25-120.5)	< 0.01
Albumin, g/L	36.407 ± 4.749	37.205 ± 4.853	0.758
Hemoglobin, g/L	127 (115-142)	127 (113.25-143)	0.89
WBC, 10^9/L	5.06 (4.06-6.27)	5.09 (3.61-6.72)	0.87
PLT, 10^9/L	119.00 (86.00-180.50)	111.00 (69.25-178.25)	0.15
INR	1.11 (1.06-1.19)	1.12 (1.05-1.26)	0.33
PT, S	14.20 (13.70-15.20)	14.35 (13.70-15.78)	0.38
APTT, S	39.60 (37.25-42.80)	39.35 (36.32-42.85)	0.47
ALT, U/L	41.00 (29.50-62.00)	58.00 (41.25-85.75)	< 0.01
AST, U/L	56.00 (41.00-81.00)	109.00 (72.00-161.75)	< 0.01
GGT, U/L	188.00 (109.00-300.50)	256.00 (186.00-415.25)	< 0.01
Cholinesterase, kU/L	4.88 (3.44-5.84)	3.89 (2.69-5.4675)	0.02
Creatinine, μmol/L	68.60 (58.20-77.25)	66.95 (54.98-79.60)	0.63
AFP, μg/L	1210 (47.86-1210)	1210 (270-1210)	0.34
Child-Pugh grade, A/B/C	94/30/1	29/25/2	< 0.01
ECOG score, 0/1/2/3	8/102/14/1	0/40/15/1	0.016
ALBI grade, 1/2/3	43/79/9	13/41/2	0.31
MELD score	7.53 (5.88-9.02)	9.10 (7.08-11.19)	< 0.01

AFP: Alpha fetoprotein; ALBI: Albumin-bilirubin; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; APTT: Activated partial thromboplastin time; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; CTPV: Cavernous transformation of the portal vein; ECOG: Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group; GGT: Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase; INR: International normalized ratio; MELD: Model of end-stage liver disease; PLT: Platelets; PVTT: Portal vein tumor thrombosis; WBC: White blood cell.

damage[13]. In this study, AST was found to be closely related to short-term survival after TACE, while ALT was not found to be associated with short-term survival after interventional treatment.

Xie *et al*[14] suggested that the total cause mortality rate, liver disease mortality and liver cancer mortality rate of those with elevated AST were higher than those of the correspondingly elevated ALT patients. This may mean that patients with

Table 3 Multivariate analysis of short-term and long-term survival

Variables	Short-term survival		Long-term survival	
	OR (95%CI)	*P* value	OR (95%CI)	*P* value
Total bilirubin, μmol/L	1.027 (1-1.054)	0.046		
AST, U/L	1.014 (1.006-1.021)	$P < 0.01$		
Sex				
Men	1			
Women	2.832 (1.025-7.828)	0.045		
Type of gross pathology				
Massive			1	
Nodular and diffuse			0.197 (0.075-0.521)	0.001
Number of tumors				
1			1	
2			1.365 (0.283-6.581)	0.698
3			5.809 (1.563-21.594)	0.009

AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; CI: Confidence interval; OR: Odds ratio.

preoperative high levels of AST do not obtain good short-term survival from TACE. When AST ≥ 87 U/L, the 3-mo mortality rate after TACE increased significantly, which indicated that correcting high levels of AST before TACE may be an effective measure to reduce short-term mortality.

In long-term survival analysis, we found that patients with only one lesion had better long-term survival than those with ≥ three lesions. Liu *et al*[15] obtained the same conclusion. Second, patients with massive block liver cancer had a worse long-term outcome than patients with nodular and diffuse liver cancer. This study used the gross pathological type of liver cancer because some patients were clinically diagnosed with liver cancer, and it was not possible to obtain liver tissue biopsy results. The gross pathological type could be judged by imaging, and its clinical applicability was better. However, in this research, the sample size of patients with the diffuse type of liver cancer was small, and this conclusion may need to be further validated in a larger sample size.

In addition, most patients had a background of viral hepatitis in the study, which was different from some areas. This may limit the application of our findings in regions where the cause of liver cancer was non-viral hepatitis. Therefore, research in other countries or regions may be needed to make up for the shortcoming of our study. Because patients with viral hepatitis accounted for the majority, model for end-stage liver disease scores in our study were higher than those of patients whose cause of liver cancer was alcohol or cholestasis.

The following limitations existed in this study. First, this study was a single-center, retrospective study, and it was difficult to avoid selection bias. Second, perhaps because of the small sample size, AUC value was not high, but the AUC value was still statistically significant. The larger and multicenter studies are needed to validate further the results in the future.

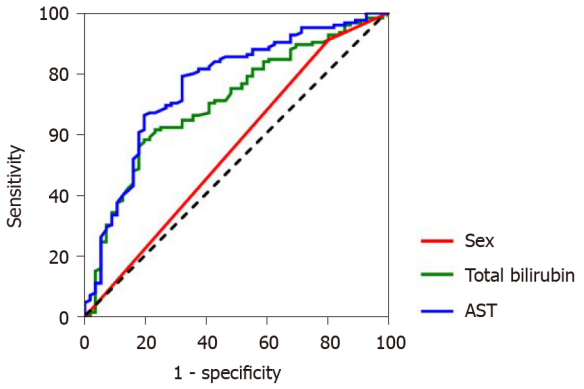
CONCLUSION

In summary, sex, AST, and total bilirubin were associated with the short-term survival outcomes in HCC patients with PVTT who underwent TACE. According to the AUC, AST was the best predictor of short-term survival, followed by total bilirubin. Multiple tumor lesions and massive block types of liver cancer were closely related to long-term adverse survival outcomes in HCC patients with PVTT who underwent TACE. In the future, multi-center, prospective and large sample studies are needed to verify these results.

Table 4 Univariate analysis of survivors *vs* non-survivors at 12 mo after transarterial chemoembolization

Parameters	Survivors, *n* = 31	Non-survivors, *n* = 150	*P* value
Age in yr	54.770 ± 10.724	51.800 ± 9.400	0.225
Sex, men/women	28/3	131/19	0.871
Cause of liver disease, hepatitis B/C/B and C/others	30/0/0/1	133/3/1/13	0.751
Tumor size, < 5 cm/≥ 5 cm, < 10 cm/≥ 10 cm	11/14/6	28/72/50	0.081
Number of tumors, 1/2/≥ 3	21/4/6	61/8/81	0.002
Liver cirrhosis, no/yes	4/27	44/106	0.059
Ascites, no/small/moderate-massive	16/11/4	75/59/16	0.892
CTPV, no/yes	26/5	132/18	0.74
Invade left and right liver lobes, no/yes	26/5	93/57	0.019
Type of gross pathology, massive/nodular and diffuse	13/18	99/51	0.012
PVTT type, I/II, III/IV	7/10/11/3	22/67/57/4	0.155
Inferior vena cava tumor thrombus, no/yes	30/1	141/9	0.854
Arteriovenous fistula, no/yes	21/10	104/46	0.861
Total bilirubin, μmol/L	19.550 (11.200-33.400)	16.600 (12.900-24.000)	0.436
Prealbumin, mg/L	124.500 (86.750-160.500)	105.000 (78.000-142.000)	0.163
Albumin, g/L	37.047 ± 5.635	36.813 ± 4.622	0.669
Hemoglobin, g/L	132.500 (117.500-146.500)	125.000 (115.000-142.000)	0.316
WBC, 10^9/L	4.565 (3.398-5.850)	5.100 (4.050-6.610)	0.284
PLT, 10^9/L	89.000 (63.250-126.000)	119.000 (87.000-182.000)	0.046
INR	1.120 (1.070-1.253)	1.110 (1.050-1.200)	0.281
PT, S	14.400 (13.850-15.875)	14.300 (13.700-15.200)	0.266
APTT, S	39.200 (36.450-42.075)	39.700 (37.100-42.900)	0.541
ALT, U/L	46.500 (38.500-72.000)	45.000 (30.000-72.000)	0.770
AST, U/L	56.500 (41.750-83.750)	71.000 (46.000-115.000)	0.108
GGT, U/L	177.500 (72.250-265.250)	216.000 (132.000-356.000)	0.036
Cholinesterase, kU/L	4.25 (2.775-5.905)	4.51 (3.08-5.79)	0.945
Creatinine, μmol/L	71.300 (61.475-79.500)	67.600 (57.400-78.100)	0.220
AFP, μg/L	568 (15.13~1210)	1210 (97.335-1210)	0.188
Child-Pugh grade, A/B/C	19/11/1	104/44/2	0.373
ECOG score, 0/1/2/3	4/24/3/0	4/118/26/2	0.086
ALBI grade, 1/2/3	13/16/2	43/104/3	0.09
MELD score	7.130 (5.548-9.315)	7.860 (6.070-9.790)	0.348

AFP: Alpha fetoprotein; ALBI: Albumin-bilirubin; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; APTT: Activated partial thromboplastin time; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; CTPV: Cavernous transformation of the portal vein; ECOG: Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group; GGT: Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase; INR: International normalized ratio; MELD: Model of end-stage liver disease; PLT: Platelets; PVTT Portal vein tumor thrombosis; WBC: White blood cell.



	AUC (95%CI)	*P* value
Sex	0.554 (0.461-0.648)	0.244
AST	0.763 (0.686-0.841)	*P* < 0.001
Total bilirubin	0.707 (0.627-0.788)	*P* < 0.001

Figure 1 Comparisons of the area under the receiver operating characteristics curves for short-term survival among aspartate aminotransferase, total bilirubin, and sex. AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; AUC: Area under curve; CI: Confidence interval.

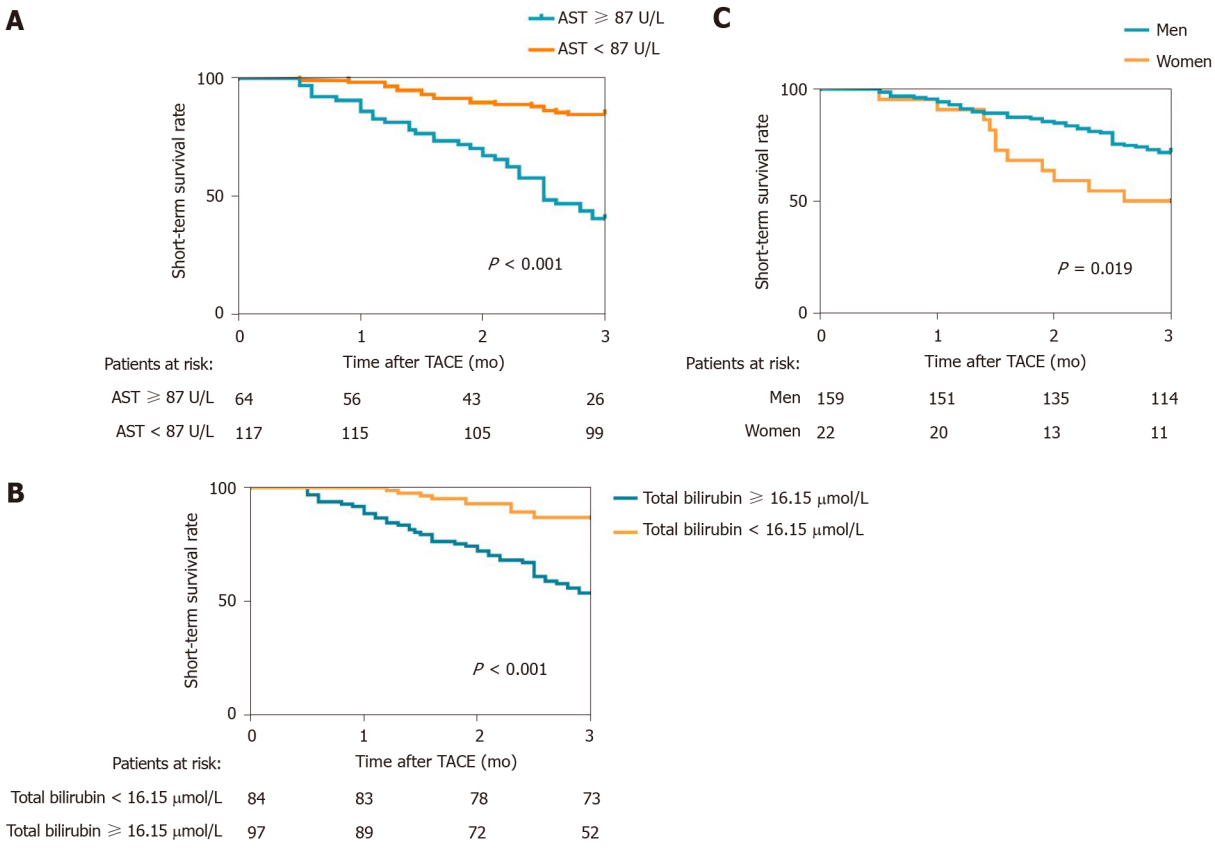
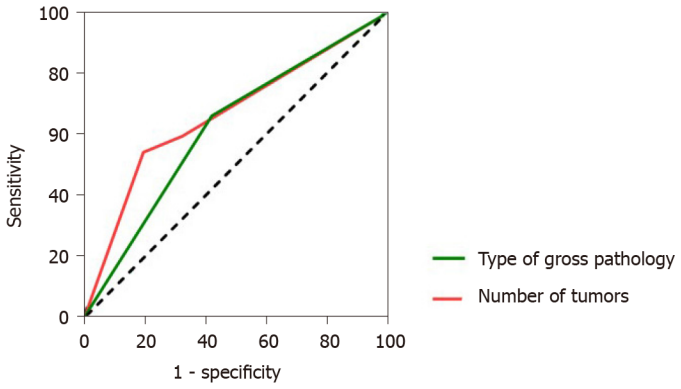


Figure 2 Cutoff values of the indicators were calculated by using receiver operating characteristic curves. A: The 3-mo survival rate curve based on the stratification of aspartate aminotransferase; B: The 3-mo survival rate curve based on the stratification of bilirubin; C: The 3-mo survival rate curve based on the sex. AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; TACE: Transarterial chemoembolization.



Variable	AUC (95%CI)	*P* value
Type of gross pathology	0.620 (0.510-0.730)	0.035
Number of tumors	0.665 (0.568-0.763)	0.004

Figure 3 Comparisons of the area under the receiver operating characteristics curves for long-term survival between pathology and number of tumors. AUC: Area under curve; CI: Confidence interval.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) patients with portal vein tumor thrombosis (PVTT) have poor prognosis. Transarterial chemoembolization (TACE) is an effective treatment for HCC patients with PVTT. The factors affecting the short-term and long-term prognosis of HCC patients with PVTT receiving TACE are still unclear.

Research motivation

The main aim of this study was to clarify the predictors correlated with the short-term and long-term survival of HCC patients with PVTT who underwent TACE.

Research objectives

We can provide some guidance to clinicians for selecting suitable patients for TACE by analyzing preoperative indicators.

Research methods

A total of 181 HCC patients with PVTT who underwent TACE were enrolled in this retrospective study. We explored the short-term and long-term prognostic factors by comparing the preoperative indicators of patients who died and survived within 3 mo and 12 mo after TACE. Multivariate analyses were conducted using logistic regression. The area under the receiver operating characteristic curve was used to evaluate the predictive ability of the factors related to the short-term and long-term prognosis.

Research results

Total bilirubin, sex, and aspartate aminotransferase (AST) were closely linked to short-term survival. When AST ≥ 87 U/L and total bilirubin ≥ 16.15 μmol/L, the 3-mo survival rate after TACE was reduced significantly. In long-term survival analysis, we found that patients with only one lesion had better long-term survival than those with ≥ three lesions. Patients with massive block liver cancer had a worse long-term outcome than patients with nodular and diffuse liver cancer.

Research conclusions

Sex, AST, and total bilirubin were associated with short-term survival outcomes in HCC patients with PVTT who underwent TACE. According to the area under the curve, AST was the best predictor of short-term survival, followed by total bilirubin. Multiple tumor lesions and massive block types of liver cancer were closely related to long-term adverse survival outcomes in HCC patients with PVTT who underwent TACE.

Research perspectives

Larger and multicenter studies are needed to validate further the results in the future.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We would like to thank Miss Huang F for her help in the preparation of this manuscript.

REFERENCES

1 **Bray F**, Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Siegel RL, Torre LA, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics 2018: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2018; **68**: 394-424 [PMID: 30207593 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21492]

2 **Zhang ZM**, Lai EC, Zhang C, Yu HW, Liu Z, Wan BJ, Liu LM, Tian ZH, Deng H, Sun QH, Chen XP. The strategies for treating primary hepatocellular carcinoma with portal vein tumor thrombus. *Int J Surg* 2015; **20**: 8-16 [PMID: 26026424 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijsu.2015.05.009]

3 **Wang JC**, Xia AL, Xu Y, Lu XJ. Comprehensive treatments for hepatocellular carcinoma with portal vein tumor thrombosis. *J Cell Physiol* 2019; **234**: 1062-1070 [PMID: 30256409 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.27324]

4 **Lu J**, Zhang XP, Zhong BY, Lau WY, Madoff DC, Davidson JC, Qi X, Cheng SQ, Teng GJ. Management of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma and portal vein tumour thrombosis: comparing east and west. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **4**: 721-730 [PMID: 31387735 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(19)30178-5]

5 **Luo J**, Guo RP, Lai EC, Zhang YJ, Lau WY, Chen MS, Shi M. Transarterial chemoembolization for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma with portal vein tumor thrombosis: a prospective comparative study. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2011; **18**: 413-420 [PMID: 20839057 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-010-1321-8]

6 **Xiang X**, Lau WY, Wu ZY, Zhao C, Ma YL, Xiang BD, Zhu JY, Zhong JH, Li LQ. Transarterial chemoembolization *vs* best supportive care for patients with hepatocellular carcinoma with portal vein tumor thrombus: a multicenter study. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2019; **45**: 1460-1467 [PMID: 31005471 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2019.03.042]

7 **Silva JP**, Berger NG, Tsai S, Christians KK, Clarke CN, Mogal H, White S, Rilling W, Gamblin TC. Transarterial chemoembolization in hepatocellular carcinoma with portal vein tumor thrombosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *HPB (Oxford)* 2017; **19**: 659-666 [PMID: 28552299 DOI: 10.1016/j.hpb.2017.04.016]

8 **Shuqun C**, Mengchao W, Han C, Feng S, Jiahe Y, Guanghui D, Wenming C, Peijun W, Yuxiang Z. Tumor thrombus types influence the prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma with the tumor thrombi in the portal vein. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2007; **54**: 499-502 [PMID: 17523307]

9 **Johnson PJ**, Berhane S, Kagebayashi C, Satomura S, Teng M, Reeves HL, O'Beirne J, Fox R, Skowronska A, Palmer D, Yeo W, Mo F, Lai P, Iñarrairaegui M, Chan SL, Sangro B, Miksad R, Tada T, Kumada T, Toyoda H. Assessment of liver function in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma: a new evidence-based approach-the ALBI grade. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 550-558 [PMID: 25512453 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2014.57.9151]

10 **Chen LT**, Martinelli E, Cheng AL, Pentheroudakis G, Qin S, Bhattacharyya GS, Ikeda M, Lim HY, Ho GF, Choo SP, Ren Z, Malhotra H, Ueno M, Ryoo BY, Kiang TC, Tai D, Vogel A, Cervantes A, Lu SN, Yen CJ, Huang YH, Chen SC, Hsu C, Shen YC, Tabernero J, Yen Y, Hsu CH, Yoshino T, Douillard JY. Pan-Asian adapted ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for the management of patients with intermediate and advanced/relapsed hepatocellular carcinoma: a TOS-ESMO initiative endorsed by CSCO, ISMPO, JSMO, KSMO, MOS and SSO. *Ann Oncol* 2020; **31**: 334-351 [PMID: 32067677 DOI: 10.1016/j.annonc.2019.12.001]

11 **Wallace MC**, Preen D, Jeffrey GP, Adams LA. The evolving epidemiology of hepatocellular carcinoma: a global perspective. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **9**: 765-779 [PMID: 25827821 DOI: 10.1586/17474124.2015.1028363]

12 **Carr BI**, Guerra V, Giannini EG, Farinati F, Ciccarese F, Ludovico Rapaccini G, Di Marco M, Benvegnù L, Zoli M, Borzio F, Caturelli E, Chiaramonte M, Trevisani F; Italian Liver Cancer (ITA.LI.CA) Group. Association of abnormal plasma bilirubin with aggressive hepatocellular carcinoma phenotype. *Semin Oncol* 2014; **41**: 252-258 [PMID: 24787296 DOI: 10.1053/j.seminoncol.2014.03.006]

13 **Iluz-Freundlich D**, Zhang M, Uhanova J, Minuk GY. The relative expression of hepatocellular and cholestatic liver enzymes in adult patients with liver disease. *Ann Hepatol* 2020; **19**: 204-208 [PMID: 31628070 DOI: 10.1016/j.aohep.2019.08.004]

14 **Xie K**, Chen CH, Tsai SP, Lu PJ, Wu H, Zeng Y, Ye Y, Tu H, Wen C, Huang M, Zhang Y, Lee JH, Tsai MK, Wen CP, Wu X. Loss of Life Expectancy by 10 Years or More From Elevated Aspartate Aminotransferase: Finding Aspartate Aminotransferase a Better Mortality Predictor for All-Cause and Liver-Related than Alanine Aminotransferase. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2019; **114**: 1478-1487 [PMID: 31425154 DOI: 10.14309/ajg.0000000000000332]

15 **Liu L**, Zhang C, Zhao Y, Qi X, Chen H, Bai W, He C, Guo W, Yin Z, Fan D, Han G. Transarterial chemoembolization for the treatment of advanced hepatocellular carcinoma with portal vein tumor thrombosis: prognostic factors in a single-center study of 188 patients. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 194278 [PMID: 24800212 DOI: 10.1155/2014/194278]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2021 April 7; 27(13): 1341-1353

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1341

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

SCIENTOMETRICS

Global research trends in the microbiome related to irritable bowel syndrome: A bibliometric and visualized study

Sa'ed H Zyoud, Simon Smale, W Stephen Waring, Waleed Sweileh, Samah W Al-Jabi

ORCID number: Sa'ed H Zyoud 0000-0002-7369-2058; Simon Smale 0000-0002-8363-904X; W Stephen Waring 0000-0001-6442-4548; Waleed Sweileh 0000-0002-9460-5144; Samah W Al-Jabi 0000-0002-4414-9427.

Author contributions: Zyoud SH designed the study, collected the data, analyzed the data, made major contributions to the manuscript's existing literature search and interpretation, and drafted the manuscript; Al-Jabi SW, and Sweileh W participated in the study design; Smale S and Waring WS contributed towards the conception, wrote part of the article; Al-Jabi SW, Sweileh W, Smale S and Waring WS were involved in interpretation of the data, and made revisions to the initial draft; all authors provided critical review and approved the final manuscript before submission.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no financial disclosures or conflicts of interest to declare.

PRISMA 2009 Checklist statement: The authors have read the PRISMA 2009 Checklist, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the PRISMA 2009 Checklist.

Sa'ed H Zyoud, Poison Control and Drug Information Center (PCDIC), College of Medicine and Health Sciences, An-Najah National University, Nablus 44839, West Bank, Palestine

Sa'ed H Zyoud, Samah W Al-Jabi, Department of Clinical and Community Pharmacy, College of Medicine and Health Sciences, An-Najah National University, Nablus 44839, West Bank, Palestine

Sa'ed H Zyoud, Department of Clinical Research Centre, An-Najah National University Hospital, Nablus 44839, West Bank, Palestine

Simon Smale, Department of Gastroenterology, York Hospital, York Teaching Hospital NHS Foundation Trust, York YO31 8HE, United Kingdom

W Stephen Waring, Acute Medical Unit, York Teaching Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust, York YO31 8HE, United Kingdom

Waleed Sweileh, Department of Pharmacology and Toxicology, College of Medicine and Health Sciences, An-Najah National University, Nablus 44839, West Bank, Palestine

Corresponding author: Sa'ed H Zyoud, PhD, Associate Professor, Director, Poison Control and Drug Information Center (PCDIC), College of Medicine and Health Sciences, An-Najah National University, Academic Street, Nablus 44839, West Bank, Palestine.
saedzyoud@yahoo.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is a common functional gastrointestinal disorder. Dysregulation of the gut–brain axis plays a central role in the pathophysiology of IBS. It is increasingly clear that the microbiome plays a key role in the development and normal functioning of the gut–brain axis.

AIM

To facilitate the identification of specific areas of focus that may be of relevance to future research. This study represents a bibliometric analysis of the literature pertaining to the microbiome in IBS to understand the development of this field.

METHODS

The data used in our bibliometric analysis were retrieved from the Scopus database. The terms related to IBS and microbiome were searched in titles or abstracts within the period of 2000–2019. VOSviewer software was used for data

Manuscript source: Invited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: Palestine

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: November 18, 2020
Peer-review started: November 18, 2020
First decision: December 27, 2020
Revised: January 11, 2021
Accepted: March 16, 2021
Article in press: March 16, 2021
Published online: April 7, 2021

P-Reviewer: Gazouli M
S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Li JH

visualization.

RESULTS
A total of 13055 documents related to IBS were retrieved at the global level. There were 1872 scientific publications focused on the microbiome in IBS. There was a strong positive correlation between publication productivity related to IBS in all fields and productivity related to the microbiome in IBS ($r = 0.951$, $P < 0.001$). The United States was the most prolific country with 449 (24%) publications, followed by the United Kingdom ($n = 176$, 9.4%), China ($n = 154$, 8.2%), and Italy ($n = 151$, 8.1%). The h-index for all retrieved publications related to the microbiome in IBS was 138. The hot topics were stratified into four clusters: (1) The gut–brain axis related to IBS; (2) Clinical trials related to IBS and the microbiome; (3) Drug-mediated manipulation of the gut microbiome; and (4) The role of the altered composition of intestinal microbiota in IBS prevention.

CONCLUSION
This is the first study to evaluate and quantify global research productivity pertaining to the microbiome in IBS. The number of publications regarding the gut microbiota in IBS has continuously grown since 2013. This finding suggests that the future outlook for interventions targeting the gut microbiota in IBS remains promising.

Key Words: Irritable bowel syndrome; Bibliometric; Microbiota; Microbiome; Scopus; Brain gut axis

Core Tip: This is the first study to evaluate and quantify the global research productivity pertaining to the microbiome in irritable bowel syndrome (IBS). We present a holistic picture of this emerging topic and explore future research directions. A number of abnormalities have been described within the microbiome of patients with IBS. The relationships of these abnormalities to the causality of dysfunction and associated symptomatology have not been clearly elucidated. Our finding, while preliminary, suggests that the future outlook for interventions targeting the gut microbiota in IBS remains promising.

Citation: Zyoud SH, Smale S, Waring WS, Sweileh W, Al-Jabi SW. Global research trends in the microbiome related to irritable bowel syndrome: A bibliometric and visualized study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(13): 1341-1353
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i13/1341.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1341

INTRODUCTION

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is a term used to describe a group of symptoms, including abdominal pain and altered bowel habits, that arises because of disturbances of the interactions between the diet, the brain, the gut, and the microbiome. IBS poses a significant disease burden, with 20% of adults estimated to develop IBS symptoms in any given year. Symptoms arise as a consequence of abnormal visceral sensation and or motility as a result of abnormalities within the enteric or central nervous systems, or both[1]. This usually occurs in the absence of 'organic' disease, but the association with other gastrointestinal diseases is common. Many patients experiencing gastrointestinal inflammation due to infection or inflammatory bowel disease develop IBS symptoms[2]. Nearly a quarter of patients with IBS without identifiable 'organic' disease appear to have low-grade intestinal inflammation as judged by faecal inflammatory markers (calprotectin)[3]. Inflammation may lead to sensitization of peripheral nerves. Most inflammation within the gastrointestinal tract settles, but in susceptible individuals sensitization of peripheral afferents may persist. Such sensitization may be driven by ongoing mast cell activation and increased epithelial

permeability associated with low-level inflammation[4].

The onset of symptoms in IBS is often associated with psychological stressors. A high proportion of people with IBS have psychological comorbidities. Chronic stress is associated with stress-induced hyperalgesia. This hyperalgesia is mediated *via* corticotrophin-releasing hormone and the hypothalamic–pituitary axis (HPA)[5]. Dysfunction within these systems is well documented in patients with functional gastrointestinal disorders and other chronic pain syndromes. Furthermore, many patients have histories of traumatic events in early life. These events may result in changes that profoundly affect the microbiome and brain development, predisposing patients to visceral pain syndromes[6-8]. In addition to direct effects on neurons proximal to the bowel, bacteria and their products have a profound effect on the development and activity of the central nervous system and, consequently, upon the psychological state and behaviors[9]. Within the enteric nervous system, certain bacterial strains may directly promote sensitization or downregulation of peripheral afferents. Of note, low-grade inflammation seen in a proportion of patients with IBS may result from the ability of specific bacteria to enhance the production and the effects of proinflammatory cytokines. Bacteria may also be able to transmit signals *via* the enteric nervous and immune systems to the central nervous system[10].

Although several bibliometric studies have been conducted to evaluate research productivity regarding various research aspects in the medical field[11-18], and some bibliometric studies have focused on microbiota science[19-25], there has not been an assessment of the research output regarding the microbiome in IBS. This study undertakes a bibliometric analysis of the literature within this field to understand the development of the literature pertaining to the microbiome in IBS and to facilitate the identification of specific areas of focus that may be of relevance to future research. This study evaluates data that will help to address the research gaps in this field. The current bibliometric study plays a significant role for researchers interested in the relationship between the microbiome and IBS, because it offers a quick reference guide for interdisciplinary researchers to know how this field has been assessed by scientific experts in previous years.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

The data used in our bibliometric analysis were retrieved from Scopus, which is a multidisciplinary database owned by Elsevier and is considered the largest and most widely used database[26-28]. Most of the publications in this field were published between 2000 and 2019. The following term combinations were searched in the title or abstract within this period: Terms related to IBS, *i.e.*, 'adaptive colitis' OR 'colon spasm' OR 'functional bowel disease' OR 'irritable bowel' OR 'irritable colon' OR 'membranous colitis' OR 'mucous colitis' OR 'spastic colitis' OR 'spastic colon' OR 'spastic bowel' OR 'functional colonic disease' OR 'colon irritable' OR 'colon neurosis' OR 'bowel neurosis' OR 'functional colopathy' OR 'functional colonopathy' OR 'chronic catarrhal colitis' OR 'colica mucosa' OR 'colonic enterospasm' OR 'dyskinesia of the colon' OR 'dyssynergia of the colon' OR 'functional enterocolonopathy' OR 'functional diarrhea' OR 'Glarry enteritis' OR 'glutinous diarrhea' OR 'intestinal croup' OR 'irritable gut syndrome' OR 'lienteric diarrhea' OR 'Membranous catarrh of the intestine' OR 'mucomembranous colic' OR 'myxoneurosis' OR 'nervous diarrhea' OR 'neurogenic mucous' OR 'nonspecific diarrhea' OR 'tubular diarrhea' OR 'unhappy colon' OR 'unstable colon', and terms related to microbiome, *i.e.*, 'microbiome' OR 'microflora' OR 'microbiota' OR 'flora' OR 'probiotic' OR 'Saccharomyces' OR 'Lactobacillus' OR 'Bifidobacterium' OR 'Escherichia coli'. The terms were selected from related reviews on IBS[29,30] and the microbiome[19,20,31-33].

Data analysis

Microsoft Excel was used to analyze the retrieved data to calculate frequencies and percentages. The current bibliometric study included quantitative data about document types, language, country of the publications with their h-index and collaboration pattern, authors of the publications, journals that published papers on IBS, microbiome documents, and citation reports. In addition, we used the Statistical Package for the Social Sciences 16.0 software for Windows to assess the correlation between yearly quantitative distributions of publications related to IBS in all fields and publications related to the microbiome in IBS by using the Pearson correlation test. Analysis with $P < 0.05$ is considered statistically significant. In addition, the VOSviewer program[34,35] was used for mapping and clustering terms according to their

occurrence in both titles and abstracts to determine hot topics in this field. Furthermore, network visualization maps for collaboration among the most productive countries and the most prolific authors in this field were prepared using VOSviewer.

RESULTS

A total of 13055 documents related to IBS in titles and abstracts were retrieved over the period of 2000–2019 at the global level. There were 1872 scientific publications focused on the microbiome in IBS. The research findings showed that English was the main research language of documents indexed in Scopus, accounting for 48.8% of the documents, followed by German (3.9%) and Chinese (2.9%). Articles were the main type of document for publications related to the microbiome and IBS, accounting for 51.9% of documents, followed by reviews (35.3%).

The number of publications related to the microbiome in IBS has increased year by year. The quantity of documents has increased each year, from 9 documents in 2000, to 84 documents in 2009, to 219 documents in 2019 (Figure 1). Published papers during the last 5 years (2015 to 2019) accounted for 47.0% of the total publications. There was a strong positive correlation between the publication productivity related to IBS in all fields and the productivity related to the microbiome in IBS ($r = 0.951$, $P < 0.001$).

In total, authors from 105 countries published their work on the microbiome and IBS topics. Table 1 lists the top 10 most prolific countries. The United States was the most prolific country with 449 (24%) publications, followed by the United Kingdom ($n = 176$, 9.4%), China ($n = 154$, 8.2%), and Italy ($n = 151$, 8.1%). The h-index for all retrieved publications related to the microbiome in IBS was 138. Figure 2 shows the network visualization map for the collaboration among the 40 most productive countries. This includes countries that published more than 5 papers on microbiome and IBS research according to the number of publications in the last two decades (2000–2019). The United States and the United Kingdom can be referred to as central countries for this network because they published research in collaboration with 40 and 31 countries, respectively. In total, 5960 authors published their work on the microbiome and IBS topics. Figure 3 shows the network visualization map for the collaboration among the 32 most productive authors (authors who published more than 10 papers) on the microbiome in IBS research according to the number of publications in the last two decades (2000–2019). EMM Quigley (United States), G Barbara (Italy), JF Cryan (Ireland), and TG Dinan (Ireland) can be considered the prolific authors of this network due to the fact that they published 61, 25, 25, and 23 documents, respectively.

Terms were extracted from the titles and abstracts of all retrieved publications related to the microbiome in IBS and analyzed by the VOSviewer software to identify the current state and hot topics in this field. Terms appearing more than 10 times were included in the map (Figure 4) and were stratified into four clusters: IBS related to the gut–brain axis (yellow cluster), clinical trials related to IBS and the microbiome (red cluster), drug-mediated manipulation of the gut microbiome (blue cluster), and the role of the altered composition of intestinal microbiota in IBS prevention (green cluster).

The top 10 journals accounted for 19.98% of all articles (Table 2). The four journals that published the most studies related to microbiome and IBS were *World Journal of Gastroenterology* ($n = 70$), *Alimentary Pharmacology and Therapeutics* ($n = 54$), *Neurogastroenterology and Motility* ($n = 52$), and the *Journal of Clinical Gastroenterology* ($n = 39$).

The sample presents an average citation rate of 42 citations per publication. However, 16.6% of the publications have never been cited. Table 3 lists the information on the top ranking of publications in terms of the highest number of citations[36-55]. The article 'Prebiotic Effects: Metabolic and Health Benefits" is the most cited article with 1147 citations; it was authored by Roberfroid *et al*[49] and published in the *British Journal of Nutrition* in 2010. This study reported that a substantial number of studies about human intervention have shown that dietary intake of food products/ingredients/supplements results in statistically important improvements in the faecal gut microbiota composition. The second most highly cited article is 'Lactobacillus and Bifidobacterium in IBS: Symptom Responses and Relationship to Cytokine Profiles' by O'Mahony *et al*[44] and published in *Gastroenterology* in 2005. This study showed that intake of *Bifidobacterium infantis* over 8 wk was associated with symptomatic improvement in IBS.

Table 1 Top 10 most productive countries on the microbiome in irritable bowel syndrome research, ranked by the total number of publications in the last two decades (2000-2019)

SCR	Country	Number of documents	%
1st	United States	449	24.0
2nd	United Kingdom	176	9.4
3rd	China	154	8.2
4th	Italy	151	8.1
5th	France	116	6.2
6th	Germany	107	5.7
7th	Canada	103	5.5
8th	Ireland	102	5.4
9th	Australia	72	3.8
10th	Spain	69	3.7

SCR: Standard competition ranking.

Table 2 Top 10 most productive journals on the microbiome in irritable bowel syndrome research, ranked by the total number of publications in the last two decades (2000-2019)

SCR[1]	Journal	Frequency	%	IF[2]
1st	*World Journal of Gastroenterology*	70	3.74	3.665
2nd	*Alimentary Pharmacology and Therapeutics*	54	2.88	7.515
3rd	*Neurogastroenterology and Motility*	52	2.78	2.946
4th	*Journal of Clinical Gastroenterology*	39	2.08	2.973
5th	*American Journal of Gastroenterology*	34	1.82	10.171
6th	*Gastroenterology*	33	1.76	17.373
7th	*Current Opinion in Gastroenterology*	27	1.44	3.225
8th	*PLoS One*	24	1.28	2.740
9th	*Nutrients*	21	1.12	4.546
10th	*Gut Microbes*	20	1.07	7.740

[1]Equal journals have the same ranking number, and then a gap is left in the ranking numbers.
[2]Impact factors based on Journal Citation Reports 2019 from Clarivate Analytics.
SCR: Standard competition ranking; IF: Impact factor.

Table 4 presents the top 10 most productive institutions on the microbiome in IBS research, ranked by the total number of publications. The four institutions that have published the most studies related to microbiome and IBS are the University College Cork (n = 87), APC Microbiome Ireland (n = 84), McMaster University (n = 45), the Mayo Clinic (n = 32), and Alma Mater Studiorum Università di Bologna (n = 38) (Table 4).

DISCUSSION

This bibliometric study was carried out using data from Scopus for the period of 2000–2019. It presents a comprehensive review of research progress on the microbiome and IBS, identifies hot topics within this field, and indicates potential directions for future research. It is apparent that the research productivity in this field has progressively increased due to the increasing recognition of the role of the gut microbiota[56,57]. In addition, this increase is probably linked to the growing number of

Table 3 Top 20 most cited articles on the microbiome in irritable bowel syndrome research in the last two decades (2000-2019)

SCR	Ref.	Title	Year	Source title	Cited by
1st	Roberfroid *et al*[49]	"Prebiotic effects: Metabolic and health benefits"	2010	*British Journal of Nutrition*	1147
2nd	O'Mahony *et al*[44]	"Lactobacillus and Bifidobacterium in irritable bowel syndrome: Symptom responses and relationship to cytokine profiles"	2005	*Gastroenterology*	1042
3rd	Claesson *et al*[37]	"Composition, variability, and temporal stability of the intestinal microbiota of the elderly"	2011	*Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*	836
4th	Collins *et al*[38]	"The interplay between the intestinal microbiota and the brain"	2012	*Nature Reviews Microbiology*	735
5th	Kassinen *et al*[40]	"The fecal microbiota of irritable bowel syndrome patients differs significantly from that of healthy subjects"	2007	*Gastroenterology*	684
6th	Pimentel *et al*[46]	"Rifaximin therapy for patients with irritable bowel syndrome without constipation"	2011	*New England Journal of Medicine*	659
7th	Rinttilä *et al*[48]	"Development of an extensive set of 16S rDNA-targeted primers for quantification of pathogenic and indigenous bacteria in faecal samples by real-time PCR"	2004	*Journal of Applied Microbiology*	658
8th	O'Mahony *et al*[45]	"Early life stress alters behavior, immunity, and microbiota in rats: implications for irritable bowel syndrome and psychiatric illnesses "	2009	*Biological Psychiatry*	634
9th	Rolfe[50]	"The role of probiotic cultures in the control of gastrointestinal health"	2000	*Journal of Nutrition*	584
10h	Carabotti *et al*[36]	"The gut-brain axis: Interactions between enteric microbiota, central and enteric nervous systems"	2015	*Annals of Gastroenterology*	580
11th	De Vrese and Schrezenmeir[39]	"Probiotics, prebiotics, and synbiotics"	2008	*Advances in Biochemical Engineering/Biotechnology*	575
12th	Rajilić-Stojanović *et al*[47]	"Global and deep molecular analysis of microbiota signatures in fecal samples from patients with irritable bowel syndrome"	2011	*Gastroenterology*	545
13th	Whorwell *et al*[55]	"Efficacy of an encapsulated probiotic Bifidobacterium infantis 35624 in women with irritable bowel syndrome"	2006	*American Journal of Gastroenterology*	541
13th	Swidsinski *et al*[54]	"Spatial organization and composition of the mucosal flora in patients with inflammatory bowel disease"	2005	*Journal of Clinical Microbiology*	541
15th	Malinen *et al*[41]	"Analysis of the fecal microbiota of irritable bowel syndrome patients and healthy controls with real-time PCR"	2005	*American Journal of Gastroenterology*	523
16th	Mayer *et al*[42]	"Gut/brain axis and the microbiota"	2015	*Journal of Clinical Investigation*	519
17th	Simrén *et al*[52]	"Intestinal microbiota in functional bowel disorders: A Rome foundation report"	2013	*Gut*	510
18th	Spiller and Garsed[53]	"Postinfectious irritable bowel syndrome "	2009	*Gastroenterology*	508
19th	Rousseaux *et al*[51]	"Lactobacillus acidophilus modulates intestinal pain and induces opioid and cannabinoid receptors"	2007	*Nature Medicine*	500
20th	Nobaek *et al*[43]	"Alteration of intestinal microflora is associated with reduction in abdominal bloating and pain in patients with irritable bowel syndrome"	2000	*American Journal of Gastroenterology*	498

researchers who are interested in the fields of neurology and gastroenterology [*e.g.*, EMM Quigley (the United States), JF Cryan (Ireland), TG Dinan (Ireland), G Barbara (Italy), Y Ringel (the United States), M Simrén (Sweden), M Camilleri (the United States), A Palva (Finland), M Pimentel (Canada), NJ Talley (Australia), and others]. Over the last two decades, advances in our understanding of the enteric and central nervous systems have led to an evolving understanding of their interactions and how the gastrointestinal microbiome influences their function. Disturbances in the gastrointestinal microbiome have been identified in patients with functional gastrointestinal disease, like IBS, and it is often the case that symptoms may be triggered by events that lead to changes in the microbiome, where the emotional context and the enteric nervous system function in tandem[1].

The results of this study indicate that the United States has been the most prolific country in this field. These findings are consistent with many previous bibliometric studies[12,58]. Research productivity in the United States is likely associated with

Table 4 Top 10 most productive institutions on the microbiome in irritable bowel syndrome research, ranked by the total number of publications in the last two decades (2000-2019)

SCR[1]	Institute	Country	*n*	%
1st	University College Cork	Ireland	87	4.65
2nd	APC Microbiome Ireland	Ireland	84	4.49
3rd	McMaster University	Canada	45	2.40
4th	Alma Mater Studiorum Università di Bologna	Italy	38	2.03
5th	Helsingin Yliopisto	Finland	36	1.92
5th	Mayo Clinic	United States	36	1.92
7th	Inserm (Institut national de la santé et de la recherche médicale)	France	30	1.60
8th	Baylor College of Medicine	United States	27	1.44
9th	Göteborgs Universitet	Sweden	27	1.44
10th	The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill	United States	27	1.44

[1]Equal institutes have the same ranking number, and then a gap is left in the ranking numbers.
SCR: Standard competition ranking.

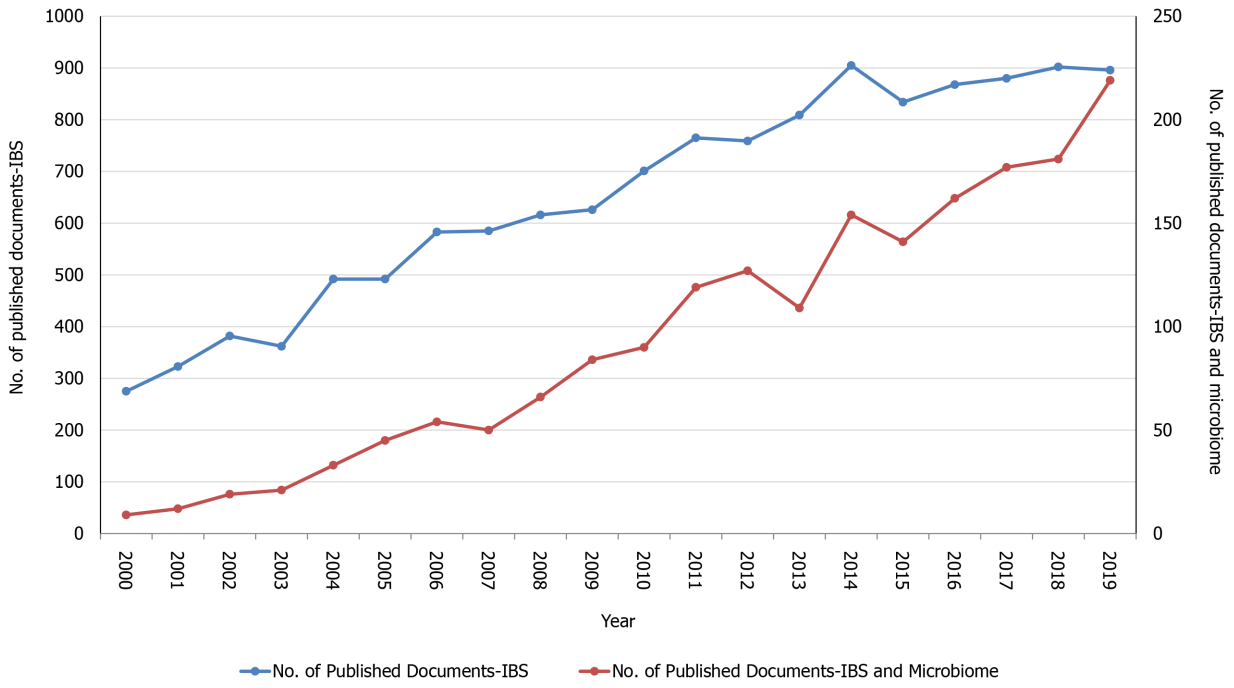


Figure 1 The annual number of publications related to irritable bowel syndrome and the microbiome from 2000 to 2019. IBS: Irritable bowel syndrome.

overwhelming support in terms of research, the wide range of researchers with an interest within this field, several well-resourced research environments, and greater availability of a well-trained workforce. In addition, the economic strength of the United States has led to a substantial amount of financial support for researchers and has enhanced the mobility of researchers[59,60]. Furthermore, in 2013, the United States launched an exceptional research project on the gut microbiota–brain axis[61], thus contributing to the increasing number of publications regarding the microbiome in IBS.

Our study demonstrates that the gut–brain axis has become the most prolific area for research within IBS and the microbiome globally, and several studies in a range of journals are proof of this emerging trend. According to these data, we can infer that central pain amplification occurs through a wide variety of mechanisms within the

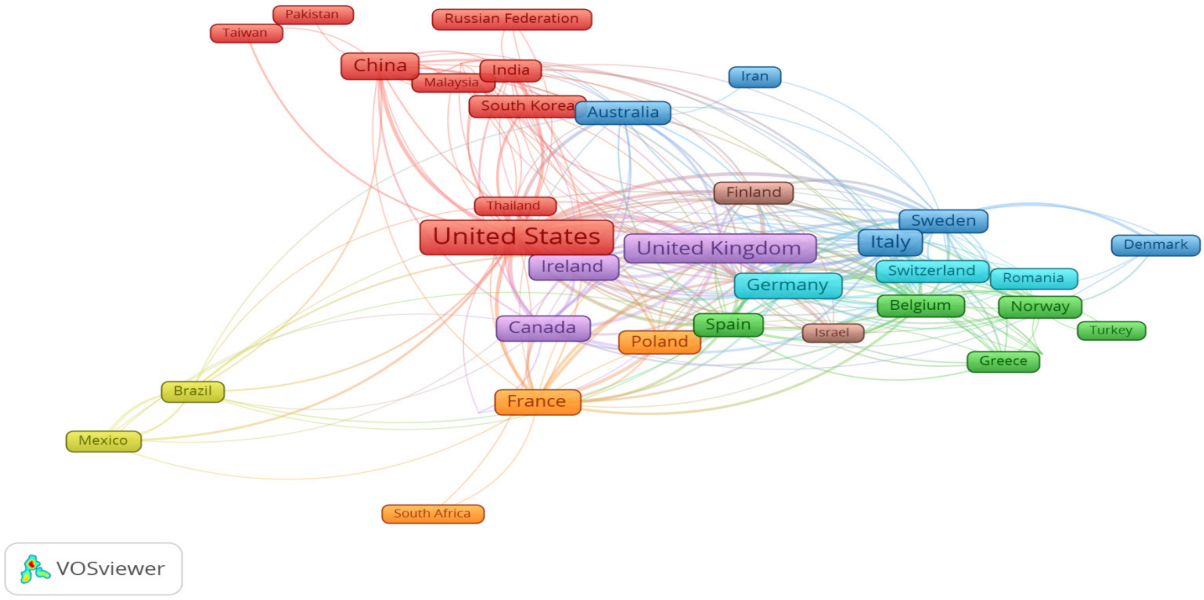


Figure 2 Network visualization map for the collaboration among the 40 most productive countries on the microbiome in irritable bowel syndrome research according to the number of publications in the last two decades (2000–2019).

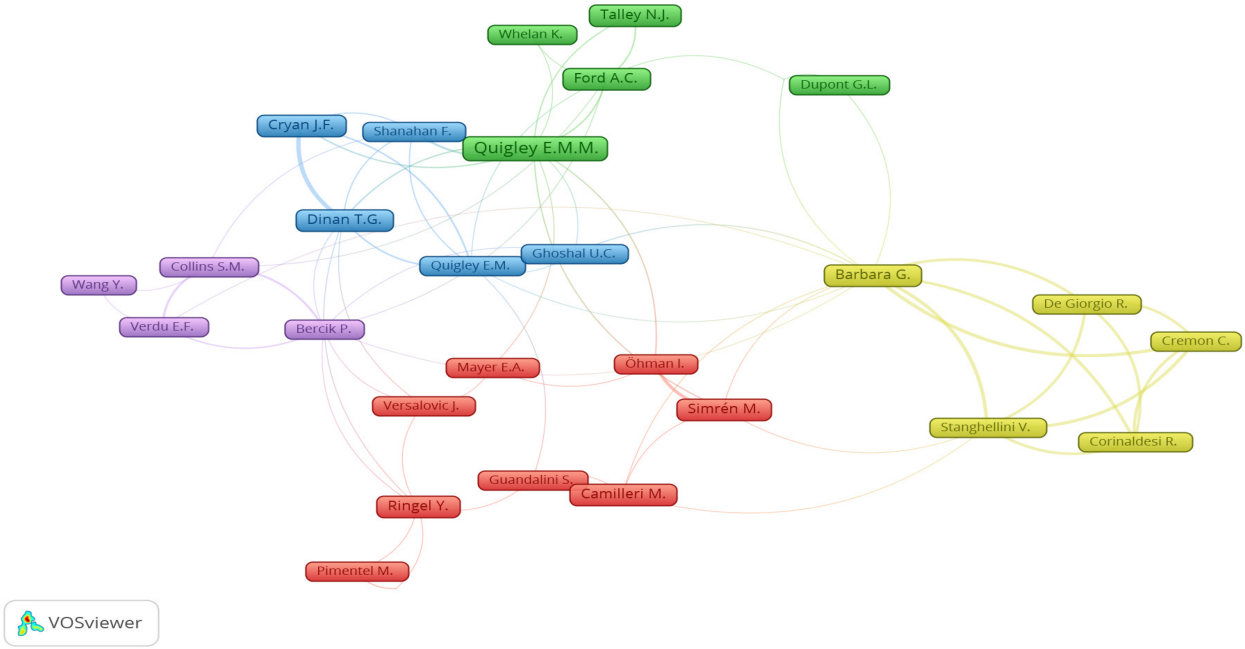


Figure 3 Network visualization map for the collaboration among the 32 most productive authors on the microbiome in irritable bowel syndrome research according to the number of publications in the last two decades (2000–2019).

central nervous system and mediates the effects of mood, emotional context, and environmental circumstances upon our central pain perception. Functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) studies have demonstrated that patients with IBS often display an exaggerated response of arousal circuits associated with the HPA and activation of endogenous pain pathways in response to visceral stimulation. Similarly, studies have shown enhanced anticipation of pain in response to conditioning stimuli in patients with functional gastrointestinal disease[62]. Neuro-immune activation within the central nervous system is associated with altered astrocyte and microglial activity that further enhances central sensitisation.

Early deprivation in patients with IBS can have profound effects on the microbiome, and researchers recognise that these factors may predispose susceptible individuals to more severe IBS[8,63-66]. Changes in central nervous system function arise as a result of

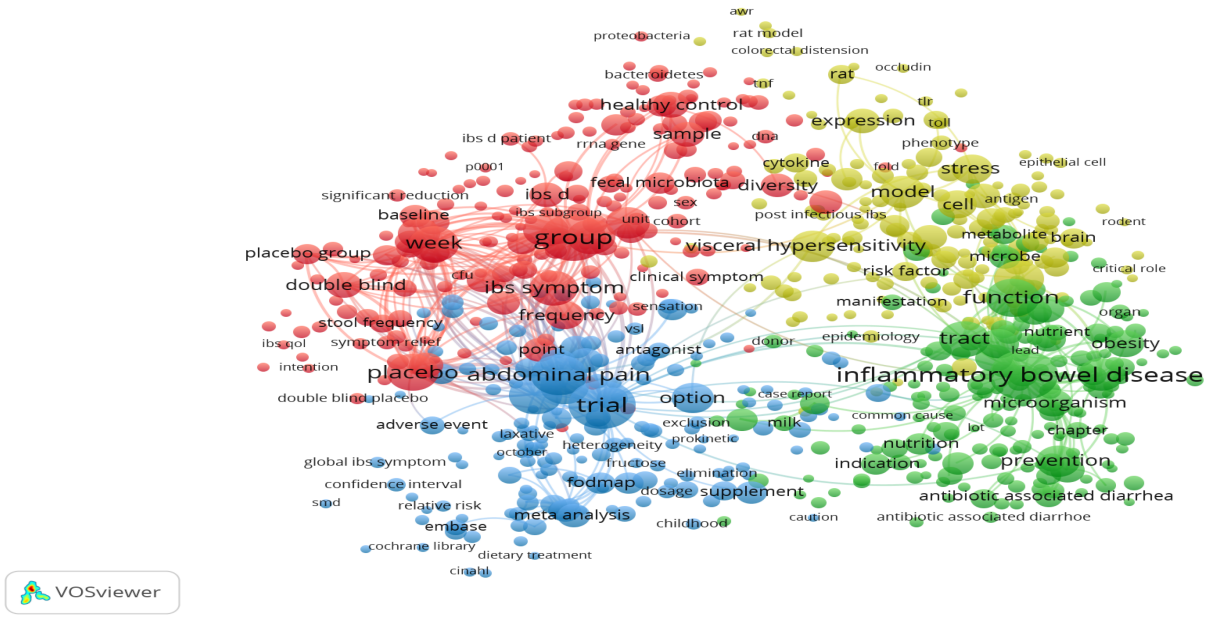


Figure 4 Network visualization map for the terms with high co-occurrence frequencies, based on the titles and abstracts of documents related to the microbiome in irritable bowel syndrome research published in the last two decades (2000–2019).

microbial products, which then influence astrocyte, microglial, and central nervous system inflammatory responses[67]. Certain bacterial strains, possibly as a result of being able to modulate these effects, may influence behaviour. Offspring of mice fed a high-fat diet display disordered behaviour and socialisation. These behavioural changes appear to be manifested by alterations in the microbiome. Correction of 'bacterial deficits' or their metabolic sequelae leads to improvements in behaviour. Specific bacterial strains have been demonstrated to increase resilience in individuals with anxiety, and these behavioural changes have neurological correlates in fMRI studies. Those factors known to provoke IBS have profound effects on the microbiome function; gastroenteritis can deplete the microbiome, and psychological stress can lead to significant changes in the representation of different phyla within the microbial flora. These potentially detrimental changes may facilitate feedback from the gut and, consequently, permit the gut to have effects on mood, behaviour, and cognitive functions.

Limitations

There are some limitations in our study that are similar to previous bibliometric studies. First, although Scopus is the most recognized and the largest database for peer-reviewed literature, our study is restricted to only the Scopus database as a source of data collection. Second, some authors or institutions have different name formats in the Scopus database, and their research count might be scattered; therefore, their names might not show in the active list. Despite these limitations, we still consider that the findings of our analysis were adequate to characterize accurately the state of IBS and microbiome research at the global level.

CONCLUSION

This is the first study to evaluate and quantify the global research productivity pertaining to the microbiome in IBS to present a holistic picture of this emerging topic and explore future research directions. The number of publications regarding the gut microbiota in IBS has continuously grown since 2013. The United States, the United Kingdom, Italy, and Ireland have been the most productive regions. Currently, the main hot topics regarding the gut microbiota in IBS are the gut–brain axis related to IBS, clinical trials related to IBS and the microbiome, drug-mediated manipulation of the gut microbiome, and the role of the altered composition of intestinal microbiota in IBS prevention. A number of abnormalities have been described within the microbiome of patients with IBS. The relationship between these abnormalities and the causality of dysfunction and associated symptomatology have yet to be clearly

elucidated. Our findings, while preliminary, suggest that the future outlook for interventions targeting the gut microbiota in IBS remains promising.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

The ability of specific bacteria to boost the development and the effects of proinflammatory cytokines can result in low-grade inflammation seen in a proportion of patients with irritable bowel syndrome (IBS).

Research motivation

The current bibliometric analysis plays an important role for researchers interested in the relationship between the microbiome and IBS. It provides a simple reference guide for interdisciplinary researchers to learn how scientific experts have examined this area in previous years.

Research objectives

This study aimed to carry out a bibliometric review of the IBS and the microbiome literature to explain the growth of this field and assist the identification of unique focus areas that may be important for future research.

Research methods

The information used in our bibliometric research was derived from the Scopus database. Terms related to IBS and the microbiome were searched in titles or abstracts during the period of 2000–2019. For data visualization, VOSviewer software was used.

Research results

Since 2013, the number of publications on gut microbiota in IBS has continuously increased. This result indicates that the future outlook remains optimistic for treatments targeting the gut microbiota in IBS.

Research conclusions

This is the first study to analyze and measure the global research productivity of IBS and microbiome research to provide a holistic view of this evolving subject and explore future research directions. It is evident that, due to the growing understanding of the role of the gut microbiota, research productivity in this area has steadily increased. Currently, the key hot topics are the gut–brain axis related to IBS, clinical trials related to IBS and the microbiome, drug-mediated modulation of the gut microbiome, and the role of the altered composition of the intestinal microbiome in the prevention of IBS.

Research perspectives

Our results indicate that the future outlook for IBS therapies targeting the intestinal microbiota remains promising.

REFERENCES

1 **Foster JA**, Rinaman L, Cryan JF. Stress & the gut-brain axis: Regulation by the microbiome. *Neurobiol Stress* 2017; **7**: 124-136 [PMID: 29276734 DOI: 10.1016/j.ynstr.2017.03.001]

2 **Hoekman DR**, Zeevenhooven J, D'Haens GR, Benninga MA. The prevalence of irritable bowel syndrome-type symptoms in inflammatory bowel disease patients in remission. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **29**: 1086-1090 [PMID: 28639969 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000000921]

3 **Holtmann GJ**, Ford AC, Talley NJ. Pathophysiology of irritable bowel syndrome. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **1**: 133-146 [PMID: 28404070 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(16)30023-1]

4 **Boeckxstaens GE**, Wouters MM. Neuroimmune factors in functional gastrointestinal disorders: A focus on irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2017; **29** [PMID: 28027594 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.13007]

5 **Park SH**, Naliboff BD, Shih W, Presson AP, Videlock EJ, Ju T, Kilpatrick L, Gupta A, Mayer EA, Chang L. Resilience is decreased in irritable bowel syndrome and associated with symptoms and cortisol response. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2018; **30** [PMID: 28718999 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.13155]

6 **Stern EK**, Brenner DM. Gut Microbiota-Based Therapies for Irritable Bowel Syndrome. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 2018; **9**: e134 [PMID: 29446765 DOI: 10.1038/ctg.2018.2]

7 **Rodiño-Janeiro BK**, Vicario M, Alonso-Cotoner C, Pascua-García R, Santos J. A Review of Microbiota and Irritable Bowel Syndrome: Future in Therapies. *Adv Ther* 2018; **35**: 289-310 [PMID: 29498019 DOI: 10.1007/s12325-018-0673-5]

8 **Salem AE**, Singh R, Ayoub YK, Khairy AM, Mullin GE. The gut microbiome and irritable bowel syndrome: State of art review. *Arab J Gastroenterol* 2018; **19**: 136-141 [PMID: 29935865 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajg.2018.02.008]

9 **Dinan TG**, Cryan JF. Mood by microbe: towards clinical translation. *Genome Med* 2016; **8**: 36 [PMID: 27048547 DOI: 10.1186/s13073-016-0292-1]

10 **Menees S**, Chey W. The gut microbiome and irritable bowel syndrome. *F1000Res* 2018; **7** [PMID: 30026921 DOI: 10.12688/f1000research.14592.1]

11 **Hernández-Vásquez A**, Alarcon-Ruiz CA, Bendezu-Quispe G, Comandé D, Rosselli D. A bibliometric analysis of the global research on biosimilars. *J Pharm Policy Pract* 2018; **11**: 6 [PMID: 29599984 DOI: 10.1186/s40545-018-0133-2]

12 **Liu H**, Yu Z, Chen C, Hong R, Jin K, Yang C. Visualization and Bibliometric Analysis of Research Trends on Human Fatigue Assessment. *J Med Syst* 2018; **42**: 179 [PMID: 30116894 DOI: 10.1007/s10916-018-1033-3]

13 **Ozsoy Z**, Demir E. The Evolution of Bariatric Surgery Publications and Global Productivity: A Bibliometric Analysis. *Obes Surg* 2018; **28**: 1117-1129 [PMID: 29086169 DOI: 10.1007/s11695-017-2982-1]

14 **Schwimmer MH**, Sawh MC, Heskett KM, Goyal NP, Newton KP, Schwimmer JB. A Bibliometric Analysis of Clinical and Translational Research in Pediatric Gastroenterology from 1970 to 2017. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2018; **67**: 564-569 [PMID: 29901549 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000002056]

15 **Wang B**, Zhao P. Worldwide research productivity in the field of back pain: A bibliometric analysis. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2018; **97**: e11566 [PMID: 30290588 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000011566]

16 **Yeung AWK**, Heinrich M, Atanasov AG. Ethnopharmacology-A Bibliometric Analysis of a Field of Research Meandering Between Medicine and Food Science? *Front Pharmacol* 2018; **9**: 215 [PMID: 29599720 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2018.00215]

17 **Zyoud SH**, Waring WS, Al-Jabi SW, Sweileh WM. Global cocaine intoxication research trends during 1975-2015: a bibliometric analysis of Web of Science publications. *Subst Abuse Treat Prev Policy* 2017; **12**: 6 [PMID: 28153037 DOI: 10.1186/s13011-017-0090-9]

18 **Zyoud SH**, Waring WS, Sweileh WM, Al-Jabi SW. Global Research Trends in Lithium Toxicity from 1913 to 2015: A Bibliometric Analysis. *Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol* 2017; **121**: 67-73 [PMID: 28064463 DOI: 10.1111/bcpt.12755]

19 **Tian J**, Li M, Lian F, Tong X. The hundred most-cited publications in microbiota of diabetes research: A bibliometric analysis. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2017; **96**: e7338 [PMID: 28906350 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000007338]

20 **Yao H**, Wan JY, Wang CZ, Li L, Wang J, Li Y, Huang WH, Zeng J, Wang Q, Yuan CS. Bibliometric analysis of research on the role of intestinal microbiota in obesity. *PeerJ* 2018; **6**: e5091 [PMID: 29967745 DOI: 10.7717/peerj.5091]

21 **Zyoud SH**, Smale S, Waring WS, Sweileh WM, Al-Jabi SW. Global research trends in microbiome-gut-brain axis during 2009-2018: a bibliometric and visualized study. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2019; **19**: 158 [PMID: 31470803 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-019-1076-z]

22 **Ejtahed HS**, Tabatabaei-Malazy O, Soroush AR, Hasani-Ranjbar S, Siadat SD, Raes J, Larijani B. Worldwide trends in scientific publications on association of gut microbiota with obesity. *Iran J Basic Med Sci* 2019; **22**: 65-71 [PMID: 30944710 DOI: 10.22038/ijbms.2018.30203.7281]

23 **Huang X**, Fan X, Ying J, Chen S. Emerging trends and research foci in gastrointestinal microbiome. *J Transl Med* 2019; **17**: 67 [PMID: 30819194 DOI: 10.1186/s12967-019-1810-x]

24 **Li Y**, Zou Z, Bian X, Huang Y, Wang Y, Yang C, Zhao J, Xie L. Fecal microbiota transplantation research output from 2004 to 2017: a bibliometric analysis. *PeerJ* 2019; **7**: e6411 [PMID: 30809438 DOI: 10.7717/peerj.6411]

25 **Ding-Qi B**, Hui-Bo C, Xin-Yang L, Yi Z, Lan-Hua L, Yun-Hai G. [Analysis of research status and hotspots of snail intestinal flora based on bibliometrics]. *Zhongguo Xue Xi Chong Bing Fang Zhi Za Zhi* 2018; **30**: 571-574 [PMID: 30567035 DOI: 10.16250/j.32.1374.2018189]

26 **Padilla FM**, Gallardo M, Manzano-Agugliaro F. Global trends in nitrate leaching research in the 1960-2017 period. *Sci Total Environ* 2018; **643**: 400-413 [PMID: 29940451 DOI: 10.1016/j.scitotenv.2018.06.215]

27 **Teles RHG**, Moralles HF, Cominetti MR. Global trends in nanomedicine research on triple negative breast cancer: a bibliometric analysis. *Int J Nanomedicine* 2018; **13**: 2321-2336 [PMID: 29713164 DOI: 10.2147/IJN.S164355]

28 **Cash-Gibson L**, Rojas-Gualdrón DF, Pericàs JM, Benach J. Inequalities in global health inequalities research: A 50-year bibliometric analysis (1966-2015). *PLoS One* 2018; **13**: e0191901 [PMID: 29385197 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0191901]

29 **Ford AC**, Quigley EM, Lacy BE, Lembo AJ, Saito YA, Schiller LR, Soffer EE, Spiegel BM, Moayyedi P. Effect of antidepressants and psychological therapies, including hypnotherapy, in irritable bowel syndrome: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2014; **109**: 1350-65; quiz 1366 [PMID: 24935275 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.148]

30 **Latimer PR**. Irritable bowel syndrome. *Psychosomatics* 1983; **24**: 205-218 [PMID: 6844534 DOI: 10.1016/S0033-3182(83)73223-8]

31 **John GK**, Wang L, Nanavati J, Twose C, Singh R, Mullin G. Dietary Alteration of the Gut Microbiome and Its Impact on Weight and Fat Mass: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *Genes (Basel)* 2018; **9** [PMID: 29547587 DOI: 10.3390/genes9030167]

32 **Memba R**, Duggan SN, Ni Chonchubhair HM, Griffin OM, Bashir Y, O'Connor DB, Murphy A, McMahon J, Volcov Y, Ryan BM, Conlon KC. The potential role of gut microbiota in pancreatic disease: A systematic review. *Pancreatology* 2017; **17**: 867-874 [PMID: 28935288 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2017.09.002]

33 **Linares DM**, Ross P, Stanton C. Beneficial Microbes: The pharmacy in the gut. *Bioengineered* 2016; **7**: 11-20 [PMID: 26709457 DOI: 10.1080/21655979.2015.1126015]

34 **van Eck NJ**, Waltman L. Software survey: VOSviewer, a computer program for bibliometric mapping. *Scientometrics* 2010; **84**: 523-538 [PMID: 20585380 DOI: 10.1007/s11192-009-0146-3]

35 **van Eck NJ**, Waltman L. Citation-based clustering of publications using CitNetExplorer and VOSviewer. *Scientometrics* 2017; **111**: 1053-1070 [PMID: 28490825 DOI: 10.1007/s11192-017-2300-7]

36 **Carabotti M**, Scirocco A, Maselli MA, Severi C. The gut-brain axis: interactions between enteric microbiota, central and enteric nervous systems. *Ann Gastroenterol* 2015; **28**: 203-209 [PMID: 25830558]

37 **Claesson MJ**, Cusack S, O'Sullivan O, Greene-Diniz R, de Weerd H, Flannery E, Marchesi JR, Falush D, Dinan T, Fitzgerald G, Stanton C, van Sinderen D, O'Connor M, Harnedy N, O'Connor K, Henry C, O'Mahony D, Fitzgerald AP, Shanahan F, Twomey C, Hill C, Ross RP, O'Toole PW. Composition, variability, and temporal stability of the intestinal microbiota of the elderly. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2011; **108** Suppl 1: 4586-4591 [PMID: 20571116 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1000097107]

38 **Collins SM**, Surette M, Bercik P. The interplay between the intestinal microbiota and the brain. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2012; **10**: 735-742 [PMID: 23000955 DOI: 10.1038/nrmicro2876]

39 **de Vrese M**, Schrezenmeir J. Probiotics, prebiotics, and synbiotics. *Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol* 2008; **111**: 1-66 [PMID: 18461293 DOI: 10.1007/10_2008_097]

40 **Kassinen A**, Krogius-Kurikka L, Mäkivuokko H, Rinttilä T, Paulin L, Corander J, Malinen E, Apajalahti J, Palva A. The fecal microbiota of irritable bowel syndrome patients differs significantly from that of healthy subjects. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **133**: 24-33 [PMID: 17631127 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.04.005]

41 **Malinen E**, Rinttilä T, Kajander K, Mättö J, Kassinen A, Krogius L, Saarela M, Korpela R, Palva A. Analysis of the fecal microbiota of irritable bowel syndrome patients and healthy controls with real-time PCR. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 373-382 [PMID: 15667495 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.40312.x]

42 **Mayer EA**, Tillisch K, Gupta A. Gut/brain axis and the microbiota. *J Clin Invest* 2015; **125**: 926-938 [PMID: 25689247 DOI: 10.1172/JCI76304]

43 **Nobaek S**, Johansson ML, Molin G, Ahrné S, Jeppsson B. Alteration of intestinal microflora is associated with reduction in abdominal bloating and pain in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 1231-1238 [PMID: 10811333 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2000.02015.x]

44 **O'Mahony L**, McCarthy J, Kelly P, Hurley G, Luo F, Chen K, O'Sullivan GC, Kiely B, Collins JK, Shanahan F, Quigley EM. Lactobacillus and bifidobacterium in irritable bowel syndrome: symptom responses and relationship to cytokine profiles. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 541-551 [PMID: 15765388 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2004.11.050]

45 **O'Mahony SM**, Marchesi JR, Scully P, Codling C, Ceolho AM, Quigley EM, Cryan JF, Dinan TG. Early life stress alters behavior, immunity, and microbiota in rats: implications for irritable bowel syndrome and psychiatric illnesses. *Biol Psychiatry* 2009; **65**: 263-267 [PMID: 18723164 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopsych.2008.06.026]

46 **Pimentel M**, Lembo A, Chey WD, Zakko S, Ringel Y, Yu J, Mareya SM, Shaw AL, Bortey E, Forbes WP; TARGET Study Group. Rifaximin therapy for patients with irritable bowel syndrome without constipation. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 22-32 [PMID: 21208106 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1004409]

47 **Rajilić-Stojanović M**, Biagi E, Heilig HG, Kajander K, Kekkonen RA, Tims S, de Vos WM. Global and deep molecular analysis of microbiota signatures in fecal samples from patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 1792-1801 [PMID: 21820992 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.07.043]

48 **Rinttilä T**, Kassinen A, Malinen E, Krogius L, Palva A. Development of an extensive set of 16S rDNA-targeted primers for quantification of pathogenic and indigenous bacteria in faecal samples by real-time PCR. *J Appl Microbiol* 2004; **97**: 1166-1177 [PMID: 15546407 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2672.2004.02409.x]

49 **Roberfroid M**, Gibson GR, Hoyles L, McCartney AL, Rastall R, Rowland I, Wolvers D, Watzl B, Szajewska H, Stahl B, Guarner F, Respondek F, Whelan K, Coxam V, Davicco MJ, Léotoing L, Wittrant Y, Delzenne NM, Cani PD, Neyrinck AM, Meheust A. Prebiotic effects: metabolic and health benefits. *Br J Nutr* 2010; **104** Suppl 2: S1-63 [PMID: 20920376 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114510003363]

50 **Rolfe RD**. The role of probiotic cultures in the control of gastrointestinal health. *J Nutr* 2000; **130**: 396S-402S [PMID: 10721914 DOI: 10.1093/jn/130.2.396S]

51 **Rousseaux C**, Thuru X, Gelot A, Barnich N, Neut C, Dubuquoy L, Dubuquoy C, Merour E, Geboes K, Chamaillard M, Ouwehand A, Leyer G, Carcano D, Colombel JF, Ardid D, Desreumaux P. Lactobacillus acidophilus modulates intestinal pain and induces opioid and cannabinoid receptors. *Nat*

Med 2007; **13**: 35-37 [PMID: 17159985 DOI: 10.1038/nm1521]
52 **Simrén M**, Barbara G, Flint HJ, Spiegel BM, Spiller RC, Vanner S, Verdu EF, Whorwell PJ, Zoetendal EG; Rome Foundation Committee. Intestinal microbiota in functional bowel disorders: a Rome foundation report. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 159-176 [PMID: 22730468 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302167]
53 **Spiller R**, Garsed K. Postinfectious irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 1979-1988 [PMID: 19457422 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.02.074]
54 **Swidsinski A**, Weber J, Loening-Baucke V, Hale LP, Lochs H. Spatial organization and composition of the mucosal flora in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *J Clin Microbiol* 2005; **43**: 3380-3389 [PMID: 16000463 DOI: 10.1128/jcm.43.7.3380-3389.2005]
55 **Whorwell PJ**, Altringer L, Morel J, Bond Y, Charbonneau D, O'Mahony L, Kiely B, Shanahan F, Quigley EM. Efficacy of an encapsulated probiotic Bifidobacterium infantis 35624 in women with irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 1581-1590 [PMID: 16863564 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00734.x]
56 **Distrutti E**, Monaldi L, Ricci P, Fiorucci S. Gut microbiota role in irritable bowel syndrome: New therapeutic strategies. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 2219-2241 [PMID: 26900286 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2219]
57 **König J**, Brummer RJ. Alteration of the intestinal microbiota as a cause of and a potential therapeutic option in irritable bowel syndrome. *Benef Microbes* 2014; **5**: 247-261 [PMID: 24583610 DOI: 10.3920/BM2013.0033]
58 **Mo Z**, Fu HZ, Ho YS. Global development and trend of wind tunnel research from 1991 to 2014: a bibliometric analysis. *Environ Sci Pollut Res Int* 2018; **25**: 30257-30270 [PMID: 30155635 DOI: 10.1007/s11356-018-3019-6]
59 **Philipson L**. Medical research activities, funding, and creativity in Europe: comparison with research in the United States. *JAMA* 2005; **294**: 1394-1398 [PMID: 16174700 DOI: 10.1001/jama.294.11.1394]
60 **Fontanarosa PB**, DeAngelis CD, Hunt N. Medical research--state of the science. *JAMA* 2005; **294**: 1424-1425 [PMID: 16174710 DOI: 10.1001/jama.294.11.1424]
61 **Wang HX**, Wang YP. Gut Microbiota-brain Axis. *Chin Med J (Engl)* 2016; **129**: 2373-2380 [PMID: 27647198 DOI: 10.4103/0366-6999.190667]
62 **Kano M**, Dupont P, Aziz Q, Fukudo S. Understanding Neurogastroenterology From Neuroimaging Perspective: A Comprehensive Review of Functional and Structural Brain Imaging in Functional Gastrointestinal Disorders. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2018; **24**: 512-527 [PMID: 30041284 DOI: 10.5056/jnm18072]
63 **Tanaka Y**, Kanazawa M, Fukudo S, Drossman DA. Biopsychosocial model of irritable bowel syndrome. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2011; **17**: 131-139 [PMID: 21602989 DOI: 10.5056/jnm.2011.17.2.131]
64 **Vuong HE**, Yano JM, Fung TC, Hsiao EY. The Microbiome and Host Behavior. *Annu Rev Neurosci* 2017; **40**: 21-49 [PMID: 28301775 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-neuro-072116-031347]
65 **Dinan TG**, Cryan JF. The Microbiome-Gut-Brain Axis in Health and Disease. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2017; **46**: 77-89 [PMID: 28164854 DOI: 10.1016/j.gtc.2016.09.007]
66 **Chong PP**, Chin VK, Looi CY, Wong WF, Madhavan P, Yong VC. The Microbiome and Irritable Bowel Syndrome - A Review on the Pathophysiology, Current Research and Future Therapy. *Front Microbiol* 2019; **10**: 1136 [PMID: 31244784 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2019.01136]
67 **Fung TC**, Olson CA, Hsiao EY. Interactions between the microbiota, immune and nervous systems in health and disease. *Nat Neurosci* 2017; **20**: 145-155 [PMID: 28092661 DOI: 10.1038/nn.4476]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2021 April 7; 27(13): 1354-1361

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1354

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

CASE REPORT

Transperineal core-needle biopsy of a rectal subepithelial lesion guided by endorectal ultrasound after contrast-enhanced ultrasound: A case report

Qiong Zhang, Jie-Ying Zhao, Hua Zhuang, Chun-Yan Lu, Jin Yao, Yuan Luo, Yong-Yang Yu

ORCID number: Qiong Zhang 0000-0002-9330-5051; Jie-Ying Zhao 0000-0002-6262-7592; Hua Zhuang 0000-0003-3395-1921; Chun-Yan Lu 0000-0002-6393-6987; Jin Yao 0000-0002-4464-7143; Yuan Luo 0000-0002-8882-7904; Yong-Yang Yu 0000-0001-9849-9468.

Author contributions: Zhang Q was responsible for the conceptualization, data curation, investigation, and original manuscript drafting; Zhao JY was responsible for data curation and original manuscript drafting; Zhuang H was responsible for the conceptualization, data curation, funding acquisition, supervision, and manuscript drafting and review; Lu CY, Yao J, Luo Y, and Yu YY were responsible for data curation; all authors issued final approval for the version to be submitted.

Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 81101061; and Sichuan Science and Technology Planning Project, China, No. 2017JY0074.

Informed consent statement: Informed written consent was obtained from the patient for the publication of the relevant information.

Qiong Zhang, Jie-Ying Zhao, Hua Zhuang, Yuan Luo, Department of Diagnostic Ultrasound, West China Hospital, Sichuan University, Chengdu 610041, Sichuan Province, China

Chun-Yan Lu, Jin Yao, Department of Radiology, West China Hospital, Sichuan University, Chengdu 610041, Sichuan Province, China

Yong-Yang Yu, Department of Gastroenterology, West China Hospital, Sichuan University, Chengdu 610041, Sichuan Province, China

Corresponding author: Hua Zhuang, MD, PhD, Associate Professor, Director, Department of Diagnostic Ultrasound, West China Hospital, Sichuan University, No. 37 Guo Xue Road, Wuhou District, Chengdu 610041, Sichuan Province, China. annzhuang@yeah.net

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Rectal subepithelial lesions (SELs) are commonly seen in endoscopic examination, generally manifested as bumps with a smooth surface. Precise preoperative diagnoses for rectal SELs are difficult because abnormal tissues are not easily to be obtained by regular endoscopic forceps biopsy. Traditional guidance modalities of preoperative biopsy, including endoscopic ultrasound, computed tomography, and transabdominal ultrasound, are often unsatisfactory. An updated, safe, and effective biopsy guidance method is required. We herein report a new biopsy guidance modality—endorectal ultrasound (ERUS) combined with contrast-enhanced ultrasound (CEUS).

CASE SUMMARY

A 32-year-old woman complained of a mass inside the rectovaginal space for 9 years, which became enlarged within 1 year. A rectal SEL detected by endoscopy was suspected to be a gastrointestinal stromal tumor or exophytic uterine fibroid. Pathological diagnosis was difficult because of unsuccessful transabdominal core needle biopsy with insufficient tissues, as well as vaginal hemorrhage. A second biopsy was suggested after multiple disciplinary treatment discussion, which referred to a transperineal core needle biopsy (CNB) guided by ERUS combined with CEUS. Adequate samples were procured and rectal gastrointestinal stromal tumor was proved to be the pathological diagnosis. Imatinib was recommended for first-line therapy by multiple disciplinary treatment discussion. After the

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest to report.

CARE Checklist (2016) statement: The authors have read the CARE Checklist (2016), and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the CARE Checklist (2016).

Manuscript source: Unsolicited manuscript

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Country/Territory of origin: China

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C, C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

Received: November 3, 2020
Peer-review started: November 3, 2020
First decision: January 23, 2021
Revised: January 29, 2021
Accepted: March 1, 2021
Article in press: March 1, 2021
Published online: April 7, 2021

P-Reviewer: Campani C, Park SB, Vignali A
S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: Wang TQ
P-Editor: Wang LL

tumor shrunk, resection of the rectal gastrointestinal stromal tumor was performed through the posterior vaginal wall. Adjuvant therapy was applied and no recurrence or metastasis has been found by the last follow-up on December 13, 2019.

CONCLUSION

Transperineal CNB guided by ERUS and CEUS is a safe and effective preoperative biopsy of rectal SELs yet with some limitations.

Key Words: Transperineal core needle biopsy; Endorectal ultrasound; Contrast-enhanced ultrasound; Rectal subepithelial lesion; Case report

Core Tip: Rectal subepithelial lesions (SELs) often manifest as bumps with a smooth surface on endoscopy. An efficient biopsy strategy is crucial to sampling for differentiation of pathological types. The transperineal core needle biopsy guided by endorectal ultrasound combined with contrast-enhanced ultrasound overcomes the limitations of previous guidance, such as sampling inadequacy, high risk of complications, and exposure to radiation. In our case, unsuccessful transabdominal biopsy led to failure of pathological diagnosis. The patient underwent this new biopsy modality then, and a diagnosis was finally made. No complications occurred. We recommend this new strategy as a promising tool for rectal SEL biopsy.

Citation: Zhang Q, Zhao JY, Zhuang H, Lu CY, Yao J, Luo Y, Yu YY. Transperineal core-needle biopsy of a rectal subepithelial lesion guided by endorectal ultrasound after contrast-enhanced ultrasound: A case report. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(13): 1354-1361
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i13/1354.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i13.1354

INTRODUCTION

Rectal subepithelial lesions (SELs) vary in types and there have been many studies on the diagnostic value of ultrasound (US). Pelvic lipomas, gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs), carcinoid tumors, leiomyomas, schwannomas, and lymphomas often originate from the anorectum[1,2]. These tumors are apt to manifest as rectal SELs on endoscopy. Traditional biopsy guidance methods include endoscopy, endoscopic US (EUS), transabdominal ultrasound, and computed tomography (CT), which have been reported with many disadvantages[1-4] to achieve successful biopsies. By application of endorectal US (ERUS) in anorectal and pelvic diseases in our daily work, we found a novel guidance method for rectal SELs biopsy, which is safer and more effective. Out of several preoperative biopsy approaches for rectal SELs, this case report focuses on transperineal core needle biopsy (CNB)[5] guided by contrast-enhanced US (CEUS) combined with ERUS. We present the following case in accordance with the CARE reporting checklist.

CASE PRESENTATION

Chief complaints

A 32-year-old woman was admitted to our hospital with a progressively enlarged mass in the rectovaginal space for 9 years.

History of present illness

The mass was found during a routine examination 9 years ago and no obvious progression was seen in following annual examinations until a year ago. The maximum diameter of the mass had significantly grown from 4.0 cm to 9.7 cm in a year, with dents in stools, which was caused by tumor compression. The patient had a

submucosal protrusion demonstrated by endoscopy in a local hospital. However, no absolute tumor tissue but only inflammation was found after several times of endoscopic biopsies in the latest 2 years, which was not consistent with clinical estimation. Therefore, she came to our hospital for further diagnosis (Table 1).

History of past illness

The patient had no previous medical history.

Personal and family history

The patient and family had no history of previous similar illness.

Physical examination

The patient's mental status, appetite, sleep, and weight were normal without any obvious symptoms of abdominal distension, tenesmus, prolapse, diarrhea, or constipation. The anterior rectum wall was plump during digital rectal examination without tenderness or blood stain on the fingertip.

Laboratory examinations

Laboratory examinations were normal, including routine blood analysis, carcinoembryonic antigen, α-fetoprotein, carbohydrate antigen (CA) 19-9, and CA125.

Imaging examinations

Contrast-enhanced CT (CECT) showed a mass with liquefaction necrosis (low density area) inside the rectovaginal space, with an obscure margin (Figure 1A). Transabdominal US was performed. A heterogeneous hypoechoic mass with a maximum diameter of 9.7 cm was also seen in the rectovaginal space (Figure 2A), which was suspected to be a rectal GIST or exophytic uterine fibroid.

Further diagnostic work-up

Transabdominal CNB (MG1522 BARD MAGNUM Biopsy Instrument; Tempe, AZ, United States; disposable core tissue biopsy needle, gauge size and needle length: 16 G and 16 cm) was performed to make a definite diagnosis (Figure 2B). Before the operation, written informed consent was obtained from the patient, and her preoperative regular laboratory examinations were normal, including routine blood test, coagulation function, and blood transfusion set. Some hemorrhage occurred from the vagina, causing premature end of the biopsy, and spontaneously relieved several days later. Strips of greyish shattered tissue (Figure 3A) were obtained, with the largest diameter smaller than 0.3 cm. Pathology indicated inadequate biopsy tissue for diagnosis. Another biopsy after ERUS assessment was recommended by multiple disciplinary treatment (MDT).

First, ERUS was performed with the MyLab Twice US system (Esaote, Genoa, Italy) equipped with a biplane endoscopic probe (TRT33, linear frequency of 4–13 MHz, convex frequency of 3-9 MHz), recording the location, size, stratification, adjacence, and echogenicity of the tumor. Then CEUS was performed with a bolus injection through the elbow vein of 2.4 mL SonoVue (Bracco, Milan, Italy) (Figure 4). Because of the heterogeneity of the tumor, it was difficult to recognize the necrotic from non-necrotic part in B mode, which can be clearly depicted by CEUS as nonenhanced *vs* enhanced area. As previous CECT has pointed out necrosis, CEUS was performed right before puncture to confirm the substantial part of the tumor for biopsy guidance for the second time, avoiding the failed samples inside presumptive solid area, which turned to be non-enhanced after CEUS. This guarantees the precision and efficiency of biopsy samples.

The probe was switched to linear mode. The transperineal puncture site and path were decided, and disinfection as well as drape were also completed. After local anesthesia, a freehand biopsy of the lesion was performed with the guidance of in-plane needle. The needle tip and its movements were continuously monitored in real time by ERUS during the whole puncture procedure[6] to procure the tissue of lesion from enhanced area of the tumor on CEUS (Figure 5). Several strips of greyish tissue were obtained with a length of 0.3-1.2 cm (Figure 3B and C). No complications occurred.

Table 1 Timeline of diagnosis and treatment process

Time	Events
January 2018	A mass in the rectovaginal space found 9 years ago had significantly grown in a year, with several times of negative endoscopy biopsy results
January 31, 2018	Transabdominal biopsy failed to provide qualified tissues to make well-defined pathological result
February 8, 2018	The patient underwent transperineal biopsy guided by ERUS and CEUS, diagnosed as rectal GIST
July 23, 2018	The tumor shrunk after 5-mo imatinib treatment, and was completely resected through the posterior vaginal wall
October 13, 2019	Fifteen months after tumor resection, no obvious sign of recurrence was found

ERUS: Endorectal ultrasound; CEUS: Contrast-enhanced ultrasound; GIST: Gastrointestinal stromal tumor.

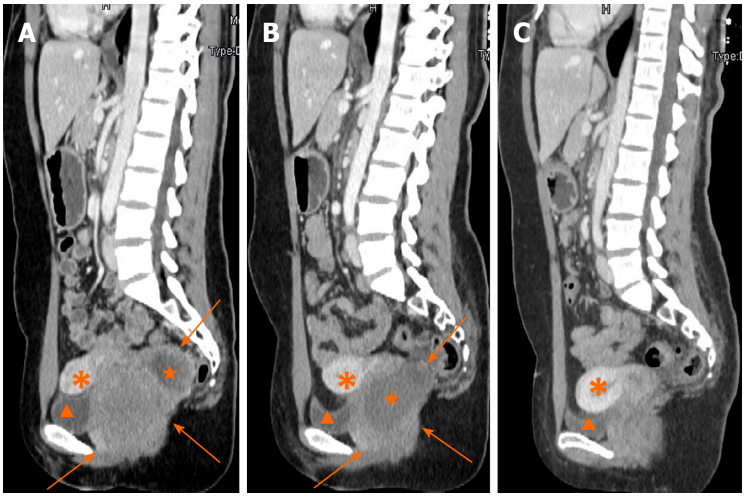


Figure 1 Contrast-enhanced computed tomography in sagittal section. A: A rectovaginal space mass of 8.0 cm in maximum diameter with non-enhancing liquefaction necrosis at the time of admission; B: The mass significantly shrunk to 6.4 cm in maximum diameter after 5 mo of imatinib treatment and non-enhanced liquefaction area enlarged clearly; C: No obvious sign of tumor recurrence in rectovaginal space 15 mo after tumor resection. Arrows: The mass; pentagrams: Liquefaction necrosis area; arrow heads: Bladder; asterisks: Uterus.

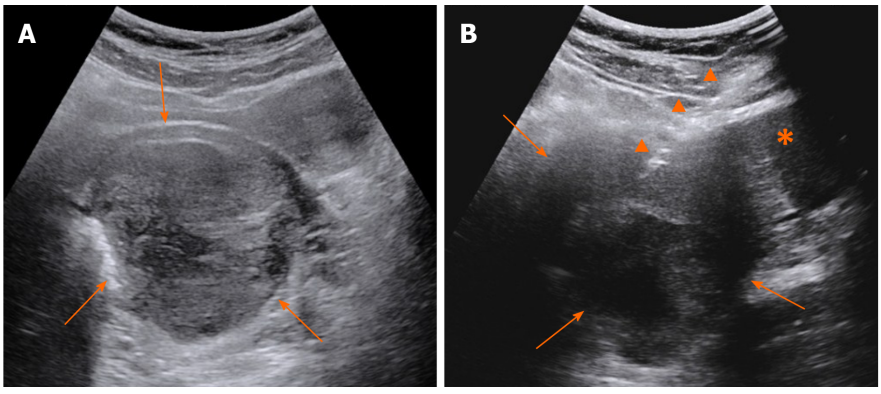


Figure 2 Grey scale ultrasound. A: A mass was demonstrated inside the rectovaginal space in the grey scale images; B: Transabdominal core needle biopsy of the mass. Arrows: The mass; arrow heads: Core needle; asterisk: Uterus cervix.

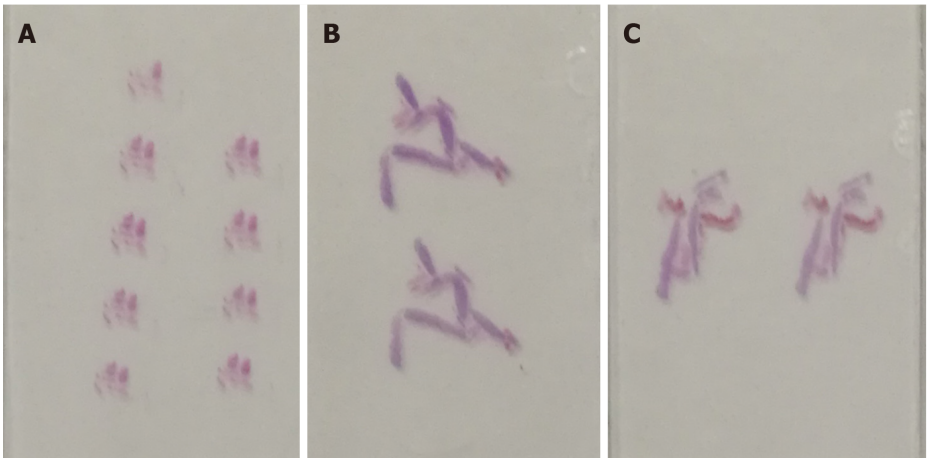


Figure 3 Slide samples. A: The shattered slide samples from transabdominal ultrasound-guided biopsy; B and C: The slide samples from transperineal biopsy guided by endorectal ultrasound, which were abundant and intact.

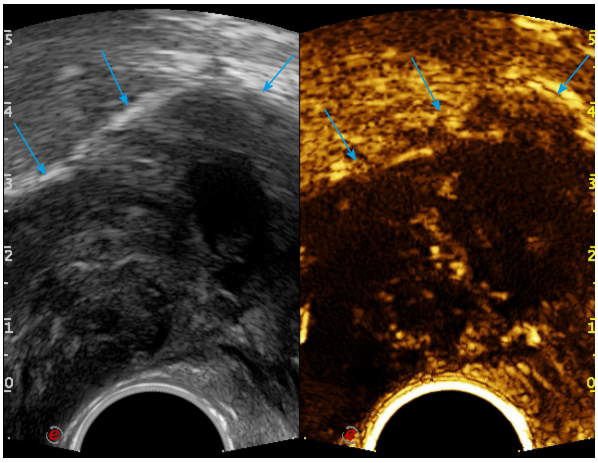


Figure 4 Endorectal ultrasound performed with the convex probe of TRT33. Liquefaction necrosis and cellular appearance were found inside the tumor in transverse sections, and the solid part of the tumor was either hypo- or iso-enhancing. Arrow: Rectal stromal tumor.

FINAL DIAGNOSIS

According to the post-operation immunohistochemical (IHC) staining, CD117, Dog-1, CD34, and succinate dehydrogenase B subunit were positive, and spinal muscular atrophy, Des, and S-100 were negative. The proliferation index of Ki-67 was 2%. The diagnosis was finally settled as GIST with post-therapeutic reaction (Figure 6).

TREATMENT

After the second MDT discussion, imatinib (Gleevec; Novartis, Basel, Switzerland) was decided as first-line therapy. It was suggested to wait for the treatment reaction before making a further therapeutic schedule. After 5 mo, CECT showed that the tumor had significantly shrunk (Figure 1B). The patient underwent complete GIST resection through the posterior vaginal wall. During the surgery, the tumor was found to originate from the rectal muscular layer, close to the posterior vaginal wall, with a smooth capsule, 5.5 cm in maximum diameter. It was greyish white on the cut surface with an interlaced appearance. The postoperative pathology findings were as follows: A suspected spindle cell tumor, interstitial and fibrous tissue proliferation, focal glassy degeneration area accompanied by a few lymphocyte reactions, remote hemorrhage with hemosiderin deposition, and a negative surgical margin.

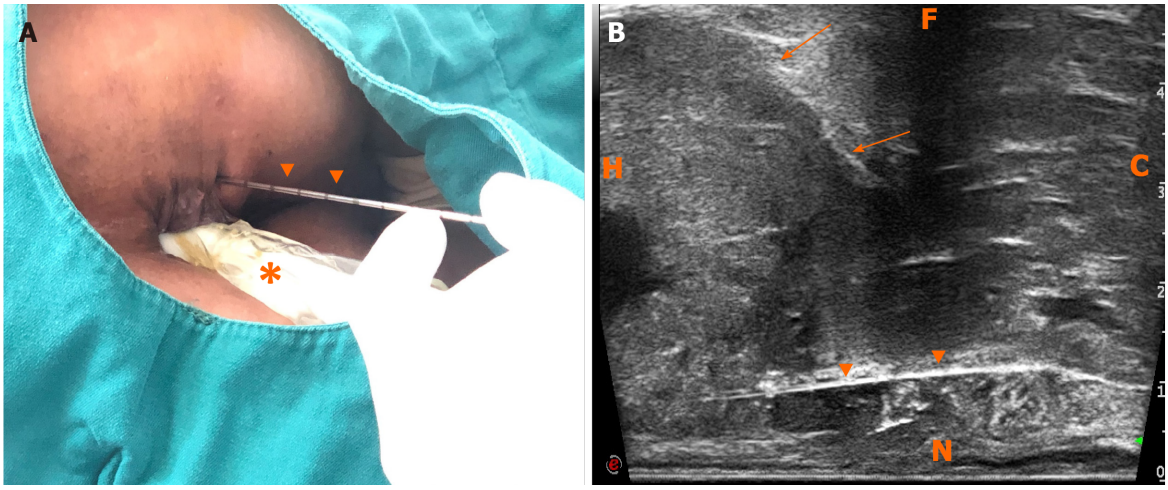


Figure 5 Freehand transperineal biopsy of the rectal subepithelial mass guided by endorectal ultrasound. A: The patient in left lateral decubitus, and the freehand transperineal biopsy was performed, guided by endorectal ultrasound (ERUS); B: Longitudinal sectional image of transperineal core needle biopsy guided by ERUS obtained with the linear probe of TRT33. H: Head; C: Caudal; N: Near field; F: Far field; arrows: Rectal stromal tumor; triangular arrowheads: Core needle; asterisk: TRT33 probe.

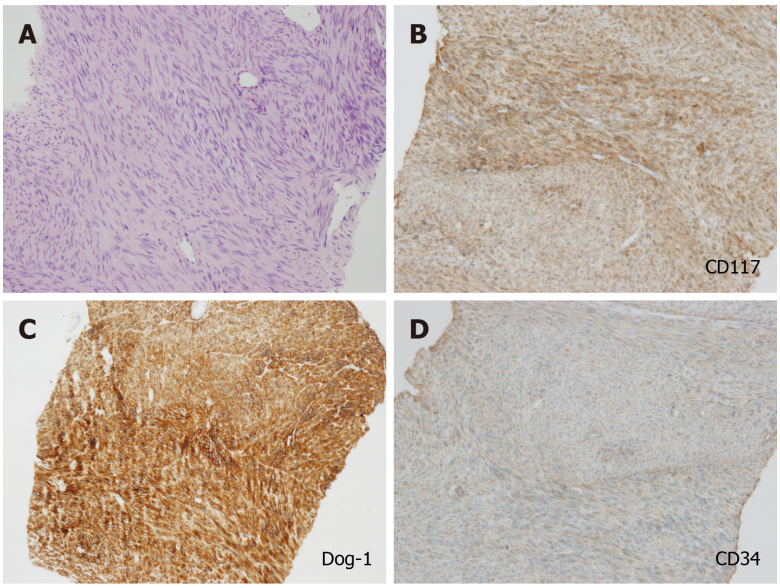


Figure 6 Pathological results. A: A mass consisting of spindle-shaped cells in hematoxylin and eosin staining; B-D: Immunohistochemical staining of the rectal stromal tumor: CD117, Dog-1, and CD34 were strongly positive (low power field).

OUTCOME AND FOLLOW-UP

Fifteen months after resection, CECT of the pelvic cavity on October 26, 2019 (Figure 1C) indicated no obvious sign of tumor recurrence. No recurrence or metastasis has been found either by the last follow-up in December 13, 2019.

DISCUSSION

GISTs are nondirectional differentiated mesenchymal neoplasms that arise anywhere along the digestive tract with an incidence of 3% in the rectum[7]. Approximately 25% of GISTs were found accidently during surgery or by imaging and about 5% at autopsy[8].

Rectal GISTs are often concealed, accompanied by long disease duration, thus symptoms often appear in the late phase of the disease. Common imaging findings include a well-circumscribed tumor with nonannular and exophytic growth pattern, without causing perirectal lymphadenopathy or bowel obstruction in most cases[9].

Rectal GISTs are of increasing concern because of the rare site and post-treatment implications for lifestyle. Targeted therapy has been successful compared with conventional chemotherapy and radiotherapy. Surgery is still the main approach to cure GISTs[10,11]. Preoperative diagnosis is crucial for GISTs, because they differ from other rectal SELs in treatment and prognosis.

GISTs have malignant potential and treatment depends on accurate pathological diagnosis by IHC staining, which requires adequate tissue samples. Endoscopic biopsy only samples mucosal tissue, yet rectal GISTs often present as submucosal growths, which forms a barrier for endoscopic biopsy. EUS-guided fine needle aspiration (EUS-FNA) is considered for preoperative diagnosis of submucosal lesions. In our case, the results of several times of EUS-FNA from the local hospital were negative. Inadequate tissue samples were mentioned by Yegin and Duman[1] in approximately one third of cases. A multicenter retrospective study[3] of EUS-FNA of suspected GISTs gave cytopathological yield, IHC yield, and diagnostic yield of 46%, 41%, and 37%, respectively. In addition, EUS-FNA has been limited in its inability to procure intact and adequate samples that are vital for histopathological and IHC analysis, causing difficulties in pathological diagnosis of GISTs[2,4]. EUS-guided fine needle biopsy (EUS-FNB) is still the commonest biopsy mode for GISTs. However, it requires adequate preoperative bowel preparation, and the risks of infection and hemafecia are higher in transrectal approach than in transperineal approach[12,13]. Also, the technique of EUS-FNB is more difficult, and it requires complex instruments, leading to unavailability in primary hospital.

We performed CNB guided by transabdominal US at first. Post-urination procedure was taken in order to avoid bladder injuries. Compression of the pelvic cavity by the probe was made to protect the surrounding bowel. The needle still went through the vagina and caused vaginal hemorrhage. Eventually, we were not able to obtain a pathological diagnosis because of the conflict between high risk of complications and inadequate sampling.

Then we performed transperineal freehand biopsy under the guidance of ERUS and CEUS, and it succeeded. We consider that ERUS guided transperineal biopsy is a reliable and safe method for preoperative pathological diagnosis of rectal SELs. And CEUS does help in the location of sampling. This method possesses advantages of both high resolution and low risk of infection[14], allowing acquirement of adequate tissue through a short puncture path. And it can be carried out under local anesthesia in outpatient department, with a lower cost of time and money[12]. The needle does not go through the rectal wall, so there is no need for bowel preparation. This method also reduces the application of antibiotics due to a low risk of infection[15].

For patients manifesting as rectal SELs and suspected tumors, to obtain preoperative diagnosis is difficult. ERUS guided transperineal biopsy can be one of the supplementary methods to routine biopsy work-up, especially for the difficult cases after several times of failure for insufficient sampling and risk of puncture complications. In addition, freehand biopsy is more suitable for underdeveloped areas because it does not need needle guide kit and costs less.

There are some limitations of this approach. For patients with stenosis in the rectum or anal tube, or those with high-position lesions beyond the display limit of the probe, the transperineal CNB guided by ERUS combined with CEUS would not be able to carry out.

CONCLUSION

Transperineal CNB guided by ERUS ensures adequate samples with a shorter puncture path, avoiding injuries to the bladder, bowel, uterus, vagina, and prostate. It also protects patients from infection caused by transrectal puncture. CEUS of the lesion can make it clear which points are the most appropriate for sampling. Transperineal CNB guided by CEUS combined with ERUS could be a supplement to traditional biopsy guidance method and it has the potential to be an important tool for preoperative biopsy of rectal SEL. The application could be limited by anorectal stenosis or with high-position lesions.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors thank Dr. Chen HJ for providing the pathological data.

REFERENCES

1 **Yegin EG**, Duman DG. Small EUS-suspected gastrointestinal stromal tumors of the stomach: An overview for the current state of management. *Endosc Ultrasound* 2016; **5**: 69-77 [PMID: 27080604 DOI: 10.4103/2303-9027.180469]

2 **El Chafic AH**, Loren D, Siddiqui A, Mounzer R, Cosgrove N, Kowalski T. Comparison of FNA and fine-needle biopsy for EUS-guided sampling of suspected GI stromal tumors. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2017; **86**: 510-515 [PMID: 28131864 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2017.01.010]

3 **Trindade AJ**, Benias PC, Alshelleh M, Bazarbashi AN, Tharian B, Inamdar S, Sharma N, Zelt C, Korrapati P, Barakat M, Sejpal DV, Ryou M. Fine-needle biopsy is superior to fine-needle aspiration of suspected gastrointestinal stromal tumors: a large multicenter study. *Endosc Int Open* 2019; **7**: E931-E936 [PMID: 31304239 DOI: 10.1055/a-0953-1640]

4 **Obuch J**, Wani S. EUS-guided tissue acquisition in GI stromal tumors. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2017; **86**: 516-518 [PMID: 28826549 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2017.03.1515]

5 **Nuernberg D**, Saftoiu A, Barreiros AP, Burmester E, Ivan ET, Clevert DA, Dietrich CF, Gilja OH, Lorentzen T, Maconi G, Mihmanli I, Nolsoe CP, Pfeffer F, Rafaelsen SR, Sparchez Z, Vilmann P, Waage JER. EFSUMB Recommendations for Gastrointestinal Ultrasound Part 3: Endorectal, Endoanal and Perineal Ultrasound. *Ultrasound Int Open* 2019; **5**: E34-E51 [PMID: 30729231 DOI: 10.1055/a-0825-6708]

6 **Kim DW**. How to do it: ultrasound-guided fine-needle aspiration of thyroid nodules that commonly result in inappropriate cytology. *Clin Imaging* 2013; **37**: 1-7 [PMID: 23206602 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinimag.2012.03.009]

7 **Egner JR**. AJCC cancer staging manual. *JAMA* 2010; **304**: 1726-1727 [DOI: 10.1001/jama.2010.1525]

8 **Joensuu H**, Hohenberger P, Corless CL. Gastrointestinal stromal tumour. *Lancet* 2013; **382**: 973-983 [PMID: 23623056 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(13)60106-3]

9 **Koch MR**, Jagannathan JP, Shinagare AB, Krajewski KM, Raut CP, Hornick JL, Ramaiya NH. Imaging features of primary anorectal gastrointestinal stromal tumors with clinical and pathologic correlation. *Cancer Imaging* 2013; **12**: 557-565 [PMID: 23400107 DOI: 10.1102/1470-7330.2012.0048]

10 **Corbin KS**, Kindler HL, Liauw SL. Considering the role of radiation therapy for gastrointestinal stromal tumor. *Onco Targets Ther* 2014; **7**: 713-718 [PMID: 24872712 DOI: 10.2147/OTT.S36873]

11 **Wu PC**, Langerman A, Ryan CW, Hart J, Swiger S, Posner MC. Surgical treatment of gastrointestinal stromal tumors in the imatinib (STI-571) era. *Surgery* 2003; **134**: 656-65; discussion 665 [PMID: 14605627 DOI: 10.1016/s0039-6060(03)00314-3]

12 **Liss MA**, Ehdaie B, Loeb S, Meng MV, Raman JD, Spears V, Stroup SP. An Update of the American Urological Association White Paper on the Prevention and Treatment of the More Common Complications Related to Prostate Biopsy. *J Urol* 2017; **198**: 329-334 [PMID: 28363690 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2017.01.103]

13 **Nordström T**, Adolfsson J, Grönberg H, Eklund M. Repeat Prostate-Specific Antigen Tests Before Prostate Biopsy Decisions. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2016; **108** [PMID: 27418620 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djw165]

14 **Xiang J**, Yan H, Li J, Wang X, Chen H, Zheng X. Transperineal *vs* transrectal prostate biopsy in the diagnosis of prostate cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *World J Surg Oncol* 2019; **17**: 31 [PMID: 30760274 DOI: 10.1186/s12957-019-1573-0]

15 **Ristau BT**, Allaway M, Cendo D, Hart J, Riley J, Parousis V, Albertsen PC. Free-hand transperineal prostate biopsy provides acceptable cancer detection and minimizes risk of infection: evolving experience with a 10-sector template. *Urol Oncol* 2018; **36**: 528.e15-528. e20 [PMID: 30446447 DOI: 10.1016/j.urolonc.2018.09.013]

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
7041 Koll Center Parkway, Suite 160, Pleasanton, CA 94566, USA
Telephone: +1-925-3991568
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: https://www.f6publishing.com/helpdesk
https://www.wjgnet.com